



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY  
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS  
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON  
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-3000

NAVMC 3500.121A  
C 466  
29 Aug 2016

NAVMC 3500.121A w/ CH 1

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps  
To: Distribution List

Subj: TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A  
(b) MCO 1553.3B  
(c) MCRP 3-0A  
(d) MCRP 3-0B  
(e) MCO 1553.2B

Encl: (1) Tank T&R Manual

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this Training and Readiness (T&R) Manual, contained in enclosure (1), establishes training standards, regulations, and policies regarding the training of Marines and assigned Navy personnel in the Marine Corps Tank occupational field.

2. Cancellation. NAVMC 3500.121

3. Scope

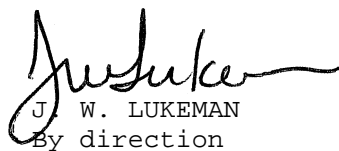
a. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute its mission and develop long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency and correct deficiencies. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines and assigned Navy personnel. References (c) and (d) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

b. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (e) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill training requirements established in this manual and provides career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

4. Information. Commanding General (CG), Training and Education Command (TECOM) will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM, Marine Air Ground Task Force Training and Education Standards Division (C 466), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, Virginia 22134.

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

5. Command. This manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.
6. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.



J. W. LUKEMAN  
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10031984200



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY  
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS  
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON  
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-3000

NAVMC 3500.121A Ch 1  
C 466  
12 March 2018

NAVMC 3500.121A Ch 1

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps

To: Distribution List

Subj: TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Ref: (a) NAVMC 3500.121A

Encl: (1) New chapter 8  
(2) New appendix E

1. Situation. To transmit updated chapter and appendix insert to the basic manual.
2. Mission. Changes to chapter 8 reflect the addition of event 1812-GNRY-2008 and modification of two vehicle operations events, 1812-VOPS-1006 and 1812-VOPS-2001. Appendix E reflects the updated gunnery event.
3. Execution. Remove chapter 8 and appendix E, and replace with corresponding enclosures.
4. Information. This change is the result of coordination between the armor advocate, operational forces, formal school, Training and Education Command, and Training Command following course content review boards for the Marine Armor Crewmember Course and Marine Tank Commander Course. Revisions address training gaps identified for the formal training of tank commanders and also corrects an administrative error.
5. Filing Instructions. This change transmittal will be filed immediately following the signature page of the basic manual.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "K. M. IIAMS", is positioned above the printed name.

K. M. IIAMS

By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10031984201

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Location: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this manual)

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated.

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1 . . . . . OVERVIEW

2 . . . . . MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASKS

3 . . . . . BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

4 . . . . . COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

5 . . . . . PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

6 . . . . . SECTION & CREW COLLECTIVE EVENTS

7 . . . . . MOS 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

8 . . . . . MOS 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENT

9 . . . . . COLLECTIVE TRAINING TOW AND SCOUT PLATOONS

APPENDICES

A . . . . . ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

B . . . . . TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

C . . . . . CLASS V(W) REQUIREMENTS

D . . . . . SIMULATION

E . . . . . INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

F . . . . . REFERENCES

G . . . . . MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION. . . . .	1000	1-2
UNIT TRAINING . . . . .	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT. . . . .	1002	1-3
SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING. . . . .	1003	1-3
ORGANIZATION. . . . .	1004	1-3
T&R EVENT CODING. . . . .	1005	1-4
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION . . . . .	1006	1-5
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP) . . . . .	1007	1-12
CRP CALCULATION . . . . .	1008	1-12
CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR TRAINING . . . . .	1009	1-13
NIGHT TRAINING. . . . .	1010	1-13
RISK MANAGEMENT (RM). . . . .	1011	1-13
IMPROVISED EXPLOSIVE TRAINING . . . . .	1012	1-14
MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS . . . . .	1013	1-14

## TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

### CHAPTER 1

#### OVERVIEW

#### **1000. INTRODUCTION**

1. The T&R Program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task List(s) (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). This T&R Manual is built around these METLs and other related Marine Corps Tasks (MCT). All events contained in the Manual relate directly to these METLs and MCTs. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).

3. The T&R Manual is designed for use by unit commanders to determine pre-deployment training requirements in preparation for training and for Formal Schools and Training Detachments to create Programs of Instruction (POI). This directive focuses on individual and collective tasks performed by operating forces (OPFOR) units and supervised by personnel in the performance of unit Mission Essential Tasks (METs).

#### **1001. UNIT TRAINING**

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential.

2. Commanders will ensure that all training is focused on their combat mission. Unit training should focus on achieving proficiency in the unit METL. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan based on the unit METL, as approved by their higher commander and reported in the DRRS. Training will support the unit METL and be designed to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of standards based training consistent with Marine Corps T&R standards cannot be over emphasized.



## **1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT**

1. Effective Unit Training Management (UTM) focuses the overall organization on development of training plans based on the unit METL and standards-based community T&R events. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its mission.

2. UTM techniques, described in references (b) and (e), provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective programs are contained in references (b), (e) and (f).

## **1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING**

1. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their MOS at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. For individual or collective training events not executed and evaluated as part of the daily routine, leaders must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or before expiration of the designated sustainment interval.

2. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation). The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events.

3. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective. References (a) and (f) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations using the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

**1004. ORGANIZATION.** This Community T&R Manual is comprised of 9 chapters and 9 appendices. Chapter 1 is an overview of the Ground T&R Program. Chapter 2 lists the core METs/Marine Corps Tasks supported by the Community, which are used as part of the DRRS. Chapters 3-6 contain collective tank events. Chapters 7 and 8 contain individual events specific to a particular MOS and/or billet, as noted. Chapter 9 contains collective TOW/Scout Platoon events. Appendix A contains acronyms; Appendix B contains terms and definitions; Appendix C contains class V(W) requirements; Appendix D contains simulation information; Appendix E contains consolidated gunnery events; Appendix F contains references; and Appendix G contains MOS-Specific Physical Standards.

# **1005. T&R EVENT CODING**

1. Event Code. The event code is an up to 4-4-4 alphanumeric character set:

a. First up to 4 characters indicate MOS or Community (e.g., 0321, 1812 or INTL)

b. Second up to 4 characters indicate functional or duty area (e.g. DEF, FSPT, MVMT, etc.)

c. Third 4 characters indicate the unit size and supported unit, if applicable (1000 through 9000), and sequence. Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of unit size to event code. NOTE: The titles for the various echelons are for example only, and are not exclusive. For example: 4000-level events are appropriate for Section-level events as noted, but also for Squad-level events.

<b>Individual Training</b>  <b>Entry-Level Formal School Training (Core Skills)</b>	<b>Individual Training</b>  <b>Skills Progression MOJT, Advanced Level Schools (Core Plus Skills)</b>	<b>Collective Training</b>  <b>Crew/Team</b>
1000-level	2000-level	3000-level
<b>Collective Training</b>  <b>Squad/Section</b>	<b>Collective Training</b>  <b>Platoon</b>	<b>Collective Training</b>  <b>Company</b>
4000-level	5000-level	6000-level
<b>Collective Training</b>  <b>Battalion/Squadron</b>	<b>Collective Training</b>  <b>Regiment/Group</b>	<b>Collective Training</b>  <b>Command Element</b>
7000-level	8000-level	9000-level

Figure. 1-1 T&R Event Levels

2. Grouping. Categorizing events with the use of a recognizable code makes the type of skill or capability being referenced fairly obvious. Examples include: PAT for patrolling events, DEF for events in the defense, FSPT for events related to fire support, etc. There is no special significance to the functional areas, but they should be intuitive to make it as easy as possible for the T&R user to find events. When organizing the T&R Manual, functional areas are alphabetized then the associated events are numbered. The events will be numbered based upon the introduction of each new functional area, allowing up to "999" events. For example: if there are seven Administrative events 4431 occupational field, then the events should start 4431-ADMN-1001 and run through 1007. Next, the Bulk Fuel events, BUFL should start at 4431-BUFL-1001.

3. Sequencing. A numerical code is assigned to each individual (1000-2000 level) or collective (3000-9000 level) training event. The first number identifies the size of the unit performing the event, as depicted in figure 1-1. EXCEPTION: Events that relate to staff planning, to the conduct of a command operations center or to staff level decision making processes will be

numbered according to the level of the unit to which the staff belongs. For example: an infantry battalion staff conducting planning for an offensive attack would be labeled as INF-PLAN-7001 even though the entire battalion is not actively involved in the planning of the operation. T&R event sequence numbers that begin with "9" are reserved for Marine Air Ground Task Forces (MAGTF) Command Element (CE) events. An example of event coding is displayed in Figure 1-2.

<p><b>Functional Area</b></p> <p>MOS/Community-----&gt; <u>####-####-####</u> &lt;-1st event in sequence</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b><u>Event level</u></b></p>
---

Figure 1-2: T&R Event Coding

#### 1006. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. An event contained within a T&R Manual is an individual or collective training standard. This section explains each of the components that make up the T&R event. These items will be included in all of the events in each T&R Manual. Community-based T&R Manuals may have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R Manuals. The event condition, event title (behavior) and event standard should be read together as a grammatical sentence.

2. An example of a collective T&R event is provided in figure 1-3 and an example of an individual T&R event is provided in figure 1-4. Events shown in figures are for illustrative purposes only and are not actual T&R events.

<u>XXXX-XXXX-####</u> : Provide interior guard	
<u>SUPPORTED MET(S)</u> : MCT #.#.#	
<u>EVALUATION CODED</u> : YES/NO	<u>SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL</u> : 12 months
<u>DESCRIPTION</u> : Text	
<u>CONDITION</u> : Text	
<u>STANDARD</u> : Text	
<u>EVENT COMPONENTS</u> :	
1. Event component.	
2. Event component.	
3. Event component.	
<u>REFERENCES</u> :	
1. Reference	
2. Reference	
3. Reference	
<u>PREREQUISITE EVENTS</u> :	
XXXX-XXXX-####	XXXX-XXXX-####
<u>INTERNAL SUPPORTED</u> :	
XXXX-XXXX-####	XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTING:  
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: XXX

MISCELLANEOUS: XXX

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX

Figure 1-3: Example of a Collective T&R Event

XXXX-XXXX-####: Stand a sentry post

EVALUATION CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Text

MOS PERFORMING: ####, ####

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: XXX

CONDITION: Text

STANDARD: Text

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Event component.
2. Event component.
3. Event component.

REFERENCES:

1. Reference
2. Reference
3. Reference

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:  
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTED:  
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTING:  
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: XXX

MISCELLANEOUS: XXX

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX

Figure 1-4: Example of an Individual Event

1. Event Code. The event code is explained in paragraph 1005.
2. Title. The name of the event. The event title contains one action verb and ideally, one object.
3. Evaluation Coded. Collective events categorize the capabilities that a given unit may be expected to perform. There are some collective events that the Marine Corps has determined that a unit MUST be able to perform, if that unit is to be considered fully ready for operations. These E-Coded events represent the irreducible minimum or the floor of readiness for a unit. E-Coded events are derived from the training measures of effectiveness for the METs for units that must report readiness in the DRRS. It would seem intuitive that most E-Coded events would be for Battalion sized units and higher since those are the units that report in DRRS. However, if the Marine Corps has determined that the readiness of a subordinate, supporting unit to accomplish a particular collective event is vital to the accomplishment of the supported unit's MET, then that lower echelon collective event is E-Coded.
4. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event in the judgment of the occupation field drafting the T&R Manual, even if those events are not listed as Measure of Effectiveness (MOEs) in a MET.
5. Sustainment Interval. It is critical to understand the intent of the Sustainment Interval so training time is not wasted with duplicated training. Sustainment Interval is expressed in number of months. Most individual T&R events and many lower level collective events are never out of sustainment because they are either part of a Marine's daily routine, or are frequently executed within the sustainment interval. Sustainment Interval is relevant when an individual or collective event is not observed and evaluated within the sustainment period, has atrophied, and therefore retraining and evaluation is required.
6. Billet/MOS. Each individual training event will contain a billet code and/or MOS that designates who is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed this manual and are listed for each event.
7. Grade. The Grade field indicates the rank at which Marines are required to complete the event.
8. Description. This field allows T&R developers to include an explanation of event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, i.e., engage fixed target with crew-served weapons. This is an optional field for individual events but is required for collective events. This field can be of great value guiding a Formal School or OPFOR unit trying to discern the intent behind an event that might not be readily apparent.
9. Condition. Condition refers to the constraints that may affect event performance in a real-world environment. It indicates what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints

or conditions under which the task is to be performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.). When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated. The content of the condition should be included in the event on a "by exception" basis. If there exists an assumption regarding the conditions under which all or most of the events in the Manual will be performed, then only those additional or exceptional items required should be listed in the condition. The common conditions under which all the events in a chapter will be executed will be listed as a separate paragraph at the beginning of the chapter.

10. Standard. The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will be objective, quantifiable, and readily observable. Standards will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, completeness, time required, and sequencing the event is to be accomplished. These guidelines can be summarized in the acronym "ACTS" (Accuracy Completeness Time Sequence. In no cases will "per the reference" or "per/in accordance with commander's intent" be used as a stand-alone standard.

11. Event Components/Performance Steps. Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and the proper sequence of execution of subordinate events. Event components are used for collective events; performance steps are used for individual events.

a. The event components and performance steps will be consciously written so that they may be employed as performance evaluation check lists by the operating forces. They must be sequenced to demonstrate the building block approach to training.

b. Event components may be events one individual in the unit performs, events that small groups in the unit perform, or events involving the entire unit.

12. Chained Events. Enables unit leaders to effectively identify prerequisite, supporting, and supported events that ultimately support MCTs/METs. Supported events are chained to supporting events to enable the accomplishment of the supported event to standard and therefore are considered "chained". The completion of identified supported events can be utilized to update sustainment interval credit for supporting events, based on the assessment of the commander.

13. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission

accomplishment.

14. Supported Event. An event whose performance is inherently supported by the performance of one or more supporting events. A supported event will be classified as internal supported if it has been developed specifically for the community. A supported event that has been chained to an event from an external community T&R will be classified as external supported.

15. Supporting Event. An event whose performance inherently supports the performance of a supported event. A supporting event will be classified as internal supporting if it has been developed specifically for the community. A supporting event that has been chained to a community event from an external community T&R will be classified as external supporting.

16. Initial Training Setting. All individual events will designate the setting at which the skill is first taught, either formally, Managed On-the-Job Training (MOJT) within the OPFOR, or via a distance learning product (DL).

17. References. The training references shall be utilized to determine task performance steps. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. T&R Manuals are designed to be a training outline, not to replicate or replace doctrinal publications, reference publications or technical manuals. References are key to developing detailed lesson plans, determining grading criteria, and ensuring standardization of training. For individual events only one authoritative reference is required.

18. Distance Learning Products. Distance learning products include: Individual Multimedia Instruction (IMI), Computer-Based Training (CBT), MarineNet, etc. This notation is included when, in the opinion of the TRMG in consultation with the MTESD representative, the event can be taught via one of these media vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

19. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METS. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R Manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel

The ordnance requirements for one year of training for the events in the T&R will be aggregated into a table contained in an appendix to the T&R. The task analyst and the occupational field representatives will be careful not to "double count" ammunition that might be employed in the performance of individual and collective events that are chained.

20. Suitability of Simulation/Simulators/DL products. The following "Suitability and Sequence" codes listed in Figure 1-5 have been developed to

communicate characteristics for employing simulations during training. Units of measure have been assigned based on the amount of time it takes a Marine or unit to train to task utilizing a particular simulator. Suitability and Sequence codes are captured in the event title in a parenthetical remark, as well as within the simulation field of the T&R event. The simulation field also identifies the type of simulation, units of measure, and any other pertinent information.

Code	Requirement
L	The event can only be trained to standard in a Live environment. Any event assessed as "NO" for Simulatable was coded "L."
P	The event must be performed to standard in simulator as a PREREQUISITE to live fire qualification as per current policy, T&R manual, or doctrine.
S/L	Event must be trained to standard in simulation then live unless simulation capacity is not available, then live only training is appropriate.
L/S	Event must be trained to standard in a live environment then simulation unless simulation capacity is not available, then live only training is appropriate.
S	Event can ONLY be conducted to standard and qualification in simulator.

Figure 1-5: Suitability and Sequence codes

a. Training simulation capabilities offer an opportunity to build and sustain proficiency while achieving and/or maintaining certain economies. Commanders should take into consideration simulation tools as a matter of course when designing training.

b. Simulation Terms:

(1) Simulation: A model of a system animated discretely or continuously over a period of time. A simulation may be closed-loop (i.e., it executes based in initial inputs without human intervention), or it may be open-loop (i.e., human input to alter the variables in the system during execution is allowed). A simulation is an approximation of how the modeled system will behave over time. Simulations are constructed based on verified and validated mathematical models of actual systems. Simulations can be very simple or complex depending on the degree of fidelity and resolution needed to understand the behavior of a system.

(2) Simulator: A simulator is the physical apparatus employed as the interface for humans to interact with a model or observe its output. A simulator has input controls and outputs in the form of human sensory stimuli (visual, auditory, olfactory, tactile/haptic, and taste). For instance, some of the features of the vehicle cab (the seat, steering wheel, turn signals, accelerator pedal, brakes, and windshield) and projection screen. Both the vehicle cab and projection screen are the interface by which a human being interacts with the simulated environment of a driving a vehicle and observe the outputs of the mathematical models of vehicle dynamics.

(3) Model: A mathematical representation of the behavior (i.e., shows the behavior of projectiles, combat simulations, etc.) of a system at a distinct point in time.



(4) Live: Real people operates real systems to include both live people operating real platforms or systems on a training range and battle staffs from joint, component or service tactical headquarters using real world C2 systems.

(5) Virtual: Real people operating simulated systems. Virtual simulations inject humans-in-the-loop in a central role by exercising motor control skills (e.g., flying an air platform simulator, engaging targets in indoor simulated marksmanship trainer), decision skills, and/or communication skills.

(6) Constructive: Models and simulations that involve simulated people operating simulated systems (i.e., MAGTF Tactical Warfare Simulation). Real people make inputs to such simulations, but are not involved in determining the outcomes.

(7) Live, Virtual and Constructive Training Environment: Defined by combining any of the three training domains (LVC) to create a common operational environment, by which units can interact across LVC domains as though they are physically located in the same operational environment.

(8) Distance Learning: Any instruction and evaluation provided through a variety of distance learning delivery systems (i.e., MarineNet) where the students and instructors are separated by time and/or location.

c. Figure 1-6 depicts an event title with simulation code and simulation and/or simulators that can be used, as displayed within a T&R event.

<u>XXXX-XXX-XXXX</u> : Call for indirect fire using the grid method (L/S)					
<u>SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:</u>					
<u>SIMULATION EVALUATION:</u>					
<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L/S	ODS	Marine Hours	12	Y

Figure 1-6: Example of Simulation/Simulators displayed within a T&R event

## 21. Miscellaneous

a. This field provides space for any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. Units and FLCs are cautioned not to disregard this information or to consider the information of lesser importance than what is contained in other parts of the T&R event. Miscellaneous fields provide an opportunity for the drafters of the T&R event to communicate vital information that might not fit neatly into any other available field. The list may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles

#### **1007. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)**

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage", as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. CRP is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. Unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called "Evaluation-Coded" (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

#### **1008. CRP CALCULATION**

1. Collective training begins at the 3000-level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. E-Coded collective events are the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has four E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)  
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)  
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)  
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)  
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP:  $75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325$

Unit CRP: 325 (total MET CRP)/5 (total number of METS) = 65%

3. CRP is a valuable tool to assist commanders in readiness reporting by providing objective data to support and inform their subjective assessment.

#### **1009. CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR TRAINING**

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in CBRN defense, in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive CBRN attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in a CBRN environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in a CBRN environment, CBRN training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under CBRN conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

#### **1010. NIGHT TRAINING**

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every clime and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on the availability of equipment and personnel.

#### **1011. RISK MANAGEMENT (RM)**

1. RM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a tool to aid decision making used by Marines at all levels to increase effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of success. RM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. All leaders and Marines will integrate risk management in the planning process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the RM process will reduce mishaps, injuries, and damage they cause, thereby increasing both individual performance and unit readiness. RM assists the commander in avoiding unnecessary risk, determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures, adjusting training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Marines/ Sailors, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment.

3. Specifically, Commanders are required to implement and document deliberate risk management in the planning and execution of all training evolutions and activities. Furthermore, the authority to approve or accept Risk Assessment Code (RAC) 1 or 2 hazards will not be delegated below Lieutenant Colonel (O5). Further guidance for RM is found in Marine Corps Order 3500.27C.

#### **1012. IMPROVISED EXPLOSIVE TRAINING**

1. Improvised Explosive Device (IED) threat impacts all elements of the MAGTF and all Marines regardless of military occupational specialty, location, or operational environment. The ability to effectively operate and survive in environments with an IED threat is critical to force protection, maintaining combat effectiveness, and mission accomplishment.

2. Per Marine Corps Policy on Organizing, Training, and Equipping for Operations in an IED Environment (MCO 3502.9), Marines must be capable of not only accomplishing their assigned mission, but also accomplishing their mission in environments with an IED threat. Counter-Improvised Explosive Device (C-IED) training must be integrated into the unit training plan IOT ensure personnel assigned to the Operating Forces train and maintain proficiency in C-IED tactics, techniques, and procedures.

#### **1013. MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS**

1. Within the MAGTF, Marines are required to demonstrate a high degree of physical strength to standard, in order to perform those regularly assigned, recurrent duties of each of the MAGTF'S military occupational specialties (MOSs).

2. This T&R Manual contains MOS-specific physical standards, which must be demonstrated, in order to achieve MOS qualification. These MOS-specific physical standards have been identified throughout this T&R manual within the administrative instructions to the event.

3. Assessments for MOS-specific physical standards have been developed and are contained within Appendix G. These assessments provide Commanders reasonable assurance a Marine has the physical capacity to perform the regularly assigned and recurrent duties of the MOS.

4. These MOS-specific physical standards are not the sole requirement for MOS qualification.

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASKS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
TANK MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST. . . . .	2000	2-2
TANK CORE (COMMUNITY) METS. . . . .	2001	2-2
TANK MET-SUPPORTING E-CODED EVENTS. . . . .	2002	2-2
TANK BN CORE MET MATRIX . . . . .	2003	2-3
MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION . . . . .	2004	2-6

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASKS

**2000. TANK MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST.** The MET table lists the standardized core METs for units within the Tank community.

**2001. TANK CORE (COMMUNITY) METS**

MCT 1.1	Provide Forces
MCT 1.6.1	Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4	Conduct Defensive Operations
MCT 1.12.2	Support Amphibious Operations

**2002. TANK MET-SUPPORTING E-CODED EVENTS.** The Tank MET-Supporting E-Coded Events table lists the E-Coded collective T&R events that support the core METs identified in table 2001. These E-Coded T&R events form the basis for unit readiness planning per reference (d), identifying subordinate collective and individual training events through the supporting/chained relationships described in each event.

**TANK T&R EVENT CODE/T&R EVENT TITLE**

<b>MCT 1.1 Provide Forces</b>	
TANK-C2-7004	Prepare for Deployment
TANK-FSPT-6001	Employ a Fire Support Team (S/L)
TANK-MANV-6002	Conduct an Movement to Contact (S/L)
TANK-MANV-6006	Conduct a Position Defense (S/L)
TANK-MANV-6011	Conduct Breaching Operations (S/L)
TANK-GNRY-5003	Conduct Tank Table XII (L)
TANK-GNRY-4003	Conduct Tank Table IX (L)
TANK-GNRY-3010	Conduct Tank Table VI (L)
<b>MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations</b>	
TANK-C2-7001	Conduct Command and Control (S/L)
TANK-FSPT-7001	Conduct Fire Support Coordination (S/L)
TANK-MANV-7003	Conduct an Attack (S/L)
TANK-MANV-7012	Conduct Breaching Operations (S/L)
TANK-MANV-7015	Conduct a Guard (S/L)
<b>MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations</b>	
TANK-C2-7001	Conduct Command and Control (S/L)
TANK-FSPT-7001	Conduct Fire Support Coordination (S/L)
TANK-MANV-7007	Conduct an Area Defense (S/L)
TANK-MANV-7009	Conduct a Screen (S/L)
<b>MCT 1.12.2 Support Amphibious Operations</b>	
TANK-MANV-7013	Support Amphibious Operations
TANK-MANV-6012	Support Amphibious Operations
TANK-MANV-5023	Support an Amphibious Assault

**TOW/SCOUT T&R EVENT CODE/T&R EVENT TITLE**

<b>MCT 1.6.1 CONDUCT OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS</b>	
SCT-MANV-5012	Conduct a Screen (S/L)
SCT-REC-5001	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (S/L)
SCT-REC-5002	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (S/L)
SCT-REC-5003	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (S/L)
TOW-MANV-5007	Conduct an Attack by Fire (S/L)
TOW-MANV-5018	Conduct a Screen (S/L)
<b>MCT 1.6.4 CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS</b>	
SCT-MANV-5012	Conduct a Screen (S/L)
SCT-REC-5001	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (S/L)
SCT-REC-5002	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (S/L)
SCT-REC-5003	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (S/L)
TOW-MANV-5018	Conduct a Screen (S/L)

**2003. TANK BN CORE MET MATRIX**

<b>MCT 1.1 Provide Forces</b>
<b>Conditions</b>
C 2.1.5.1 Lead Time: Moderate (days to weeks)
C 2.1.5.2 Mission Duration: Short (30-90 days), Medium (90-180 days), Long (180-365 days)
<b>Personnel Standards</b>
>/=1 tank company with 90% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 tank platoon with 100% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
<b>Equipment Standards</b>
>/=1 tank company equipped with 14 M1A1 Tanks and associated equipment
>/=1 tank platoon equipped with 4 M1A1 Tanks
<b>Training Standards</b>
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-C2-7004 Prepare for Deployment
>/=1 tank company trained to standard in TANK-FSPT-6001 Employ a Fire Support Team
>/=1 tank company trained to standard in TANK-MANV-6002 Conduct a Movement to Contact
>/=1 tank company trained to standard in TANK-MANV-6006 Conduct a Position Defense
>/=1 tank company trained to standard in TANK-MANV-6011 Conduct Breaching Operations
>/=1 tank platoon trained to standard in TANK-GNRY-5003 Conduct Tank Table XII
>/=2 tank sections trained to standard in TANK-GNRY-4003 Conduct Tank Table IX
>/=4 tank crews trained to standard in TANK-GNRY-3010 Conduct Tank Table VI
<b>Output Standards</b>
>/=1 tank company world-wide deployable
>/=1 tank platoon world-wide deployable
>/=100% of rotational force requirements (e.g., MEU) filled with forces capable of assigned missions
<b>Certification Standards</b>
Y/N Forces are certified IAW USMC Force Generation Order to meet CCDR

requirements
<b>MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations</b>
<b>Conditions</b>
C 1.3.2.1 Light: Day (overcast day), Negligible (overcast night)
<b>Personnel Standards (1st)</b>
>/=3 tank companies with 90% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 TOW platoon with 80% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 scout platoon with 80% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/O
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/O
<b>Personnel Standards (2d)</b>
>/=2 tank companies with 90% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/O
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/O
<b>Personnel Standards (4th)</b>
>/=4 tank companies with 90% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 TOW platoon with 80% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 scout platoon with 80% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/O
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/O
<b>Equipment Standards (1st/4th)</b>
>/=3 tank companies with 90% of T/E ready and available
>/=1 TOW platoon with 80% of T/E ready and available
>/=1 scout platoon with 80% of T/E ready and available
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/E ready and available
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/E ready and available
<b>Equipment Standards (2d)</b>
>/=2 tank companies with 90% of T/E ready and available
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/E ready and available
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/E ready and available
<b>Training Standards</b>
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-C2-7002 Conduct Mobile Command and Control
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-FSPT-7001 Conduct Fire Support Coordination
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-MANV-7003 Conduct an Attack
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-MANV-7012 Conduct Breaching Operations
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-MANV-7015 Conduct a Guard
<b>Output Standards</b>
Y/N Capable of destroying an enemy force of company strength in prepared defensive positions



Y/N Capable of opening a single breach lane through an obstacle
Y/N Capable of conducting, commanding, and controlling battalion offensive operations across all warfighting functions
Y/N Capable of integrating fires with maneuver
<b>Certification Standards</b>
Y/N Battalion-level field exercise(s) including all E-coded events within the last 12 months.
<b>MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations</b>
<b>Conditions</b>
C 1.3.2.1 Light: Day (overcast day), Negligible (overcast night)
<b>Personnel Standards (1st)</b>
>/=3 tank companies with 90% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 TOW platoon with 80% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 scout platoon with 80% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/O
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/O
<b>Personnel Standards (2d)</b>
>/=2 tank companies with 90% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/O
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/O
<b>Personnel Standards (4th)</b>
>/=4 tank companies with 90% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 TOW platoon with 80% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 scout platoon with 80% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/O
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/O
<b>Equipment Standards (1st/4th)</b>
>/=3 tank companies with 90% of T/E ready and available
>/=1 TOW platoon with 80% of T/E ready and available
>/=1 scout platoon with 80% of T/E ready and available
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/E ready and available
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/E ready and available
<b>Equipment Standards (2d)</b>
>/=2 tank companies with 90% of T/E ready and available
Y/N Battalion Headquarters (alpha/bravo command groups) with 80% of T/E ready and available
Y/N Battalion CSS capability (combat trains, field trains) with 80% of T/E ready and available
<b>Training Standards</b>
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-C2-7002 Conduct Mobile Command and Control
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-FSPT-7001 Conduct Fire Support Coordination
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-MANV-7007 Conduct an Area Defense

Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-MANV-7015 Conduct a Guard
<b>Certification Standards</b>
Y/N Battalion-level field exercise(s) including all E-coded events within the last 12 months.
<b>Output Standards</b>
Y/N Capable of defending one regimental avenue of approach or three battalion avenues of approach (1st and 4th)
Y/N Capable of defending one regimental avenue of approach or two battalion avenues of approach (2d)
Y/N Capable of mobile defensive operations
Y/N Capable of conducting, commanding, and controlling battalion defensive operations across all warfighting functions
<b>MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations</b>
<b>Conditions</b>
C 1.3.2.1 Light: Day (overcast day), Negligible (overcast night)
<b>Personnel Standards</b>
>/=1 tank company with 90% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
>/=1 tank platoon with 100% of T/O billets filled with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
<b>Equipment Standards</b>
Y/N Battalion has sufficient fording equipment to support the embarkation of 1 tank company plus 1 tank platoon
>/=1 tank company with 90% of T/E ready and available
>/=1 tank platoon with 100% of T/E ready and available
<b>Training Standards</b>
Y/N battalion trained to standard in TANK-MANV-7013 Support an Amphibious Assault
>/=1 tank company trained to standard in TANK-MANV-6002 Conduct a Movement to Contact
>/=1 tank platoon trained to standard in TANK-MANV-5023 Support an Amphibious Assault
<b>Output Standards</b>
>/=1 tank company provided to support amphibious operations
>/=1 tank platoon provided to support amphibious operations
<b>Certification Standards</b>
>/=3 platoons have completed LCAC/LCU exercise within the last 12 months.

#### 2004. MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION

The below is the description of the Marine Corps Tasks assigned to the tank community.

**MCT 1.1 Provide Forces.** To provide and deploy all Marine Corps combat, combat support, and combat service support units. Forward-deployed Marine Air-Ground Task Forces (MAGTFs), with their range of capabilities, are designed to enable the Joint Force Commander to resolve crises and win conflicts. MAGTFs are uniquely suited to support the national security strategy by rapidly projecting the required capability into a foreign setting to abate the crisis. This capability is central to the United States ability to safeguard its national interests.

**MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations.** Take the initiative, gain freedom of action to allow swift transition from one action to another and to put the enemy at risk throughout the depth and space of the battlespace. Defeat, destroy or neutralize the enemy force by taking the fight to the enemy in such a way as to achieve victory at least cost.

**MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations.** Take action to defeat an enemy attack. Buy time, to hold a piece of key terrain, to facilitate other operations, to preoccupy the enemy in one area so friendly forces can attack him in another, or to erode enemy resources at a rapid rate while reinforcing friendly operations.

**MCT 1.12.2 Support Amphibious Operations.** To support amphibious operations by conducting tasks in one or more of the warfighting functions. The performance of these tasks will be shaped by the unique requirement of the broader amphibious mission. Supporting capabilities must be tailored to the requirements of each phase of the operation with forces that are no larger or heavier than necessary to accomplish the mission.

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	3000	3-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	3001	3-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. . . . .	3002	3-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY. . . . .	3003	3-2
RESTRICTIVE/SEVERELY RESTRICTED TERRAIN TRAINING. . . . .	3004	3-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	3005	3-3
BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . .	3006	3-4

## TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

### CHAPTER 3

#### BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**3000. PURPOSE.** This chapter contains the battalion level tank unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies Mission Essential Tasks (METs) and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

#### **3001. EVENT CODING**

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TANK" indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the battalion level are:

C2 - Command and Control	INT - Intelligence
CSS - Combat Service Support	LOG - Logistics
FPRO - Force Protection	MANV - Maneuver
FSPT - Fire Support	

c. Field three - This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events.

**3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.** Each event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

#### **3003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY**

1. A Tank Battalion serves as the Ground Combat Element's (GCEs) primary armored maneuver element capable of task-organizing into a battalion task force and/or multiple company team sized elements. It is uniquely organized and equipped to conduct maneuver warfare to shatter the enemy's cohesion

through a variety of rapid, focused, and unexpected actions which create a turbulent and rapidly deteriorating situation with which the enemy cannot cope.

2. Provides the MAGTF an expeditionary, all-weather, day, night, CBRN capable, armor protected mobility, firepower, and shock effect as an independent maneuver element employed throughout the full range of military operations.
3. Employs redundant mobile command and control echelons with organic Fire Support Coordination Center capable of employing a reinforced mechanized task force across all warfighting functions.
4. Capable of logistically sustaining a reinforced mechanized armored task force, across all functions of logistics with organic personnel and equipment.
5. Uniquely suited to conduct offensive operations: movement to contact, attack, exploitation, and pursuit by conducting offensive forms of maneuver.
6. Capable of conducting security operations independently or as part of a larger force.
7. Capable of conducting forcible entry.
8. Optimally suited to conduct maneuver in support of defensive operations to defeat enemy forces or retain and control terrain through maneuver, and long-range, precision direct fire.
9. Uniquely suited to conduct all offensive and defensive operations in a CBRN environment.
10. Prepares for, participates in, conducts and directs reconnaissance operations.
11. Prepares for, participates in, and supports amphibious planning and operations.

**3004. RESTRICTIVE/SEVERELY RESTRICTED TERRAIN TRAINING.** To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train in restrictive/severely restricted terrain as a task-organized unit. Units should strive to conduct all events in this chapter integrating non-organic assets in multiple operating environments.

**3005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS			
Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
TANK-C2-7001		Conduct Command and Control (S/L)	3-4
<b>TANK-C2-7002</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Mobile Command and Control (S/L)</b>	3-5
TANK-C2-7003		Command and Control Tactical Logistics Operations (S/L)	3-6

<b>TANK-C2-7004</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Prepare for Deployment</b>	3-7
TANK-CSS-7001		Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations	3-8
TANK-FPRO-7001		Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment	3-9
TANK-FPRO-7002		Prepare for an Imminent Chemical or Biological Attack	3-10
TANK-FPRO-7003		React to an Anticipated Chemical or Biological Attack	3-10
TANK-FPRO-7004		React to an Unanticipated Chemical or Biological Attack	3-11
<b>TANK-FSPT-7001</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Fire Support Coordination (S/L)</b>	3-12
TANK-INT-7001		Direct Intelligence Operations (S/L)	3-13
TANK-LOG-7004		Conduct Tactical Logistics (S/L)	3-14
TANK-MANV-7001		Occupy an Assembly Area	3-15
TANK-MANV-7002		Conduct a Movement to Contact (S/L)	3-16
<b>TANK-MANV-7003</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct an Attack (S/L)</b>	3-17
TANK-MANV-7004		Conduct an Exploitation (S/L)	3-18
TANK-MANV-7005		Conduct a Pursuit (S/L)	3-20
TANK-MANV-7006		Conduct a Mobile Defense (S/L)	3-21
<b>TANK-MANV-7007</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct an Area Defense (S/L)</b>	3-22
TANK-MANV-7008		Conduct a Retrograde (S/L)	3-23
TANK-MANV-7009		Conduct a Screen (S/L)	3-24
TANK-MANV-7010		Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)	3-24
TANK-MANV-7011		Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)	3-25
<b>TANK-MANV-7012</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Breaching Operations (S/L)</b>	3-26
<b>TANK-MANV-7013</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Support Amphibious Operations</b>	3-27
TANK-MANV-7014		Direct Reconnaissance Operations (S/L)	3-28
<b>TANK-MANV-7015</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct a Guard (S/L)</b>	3-29

### 3006. BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**TANK-C2-7001:** Conduct Command and Control (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To facilitate command and control.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ C2 support structures.
2. Implement tactical control measures.
3. Plan and track decision points (CCIR's, Essential Elements of Friendly Information (EEFI)), and Information Exchange Requirements (IERS).
4. Track higher, adjacent, supporting units.
5. Generate and disseminate orders to HASS elements.
6. Provide information to Higher, Adjacent, Subordinate, and Supporting (HASS) units (as required).
7. Monitor transitions (phases, units, etc.).
8. Maintain situational awareness.
9. Prepare for follow on operations as appropriate (branches, sequels, etc.).

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. FM 6-0 Commander and Staff Organization and Operations
3. MCDP 6 Command and Control
4. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
8. MCWP 6-22A Multiservice Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Radio (SINGARS)

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-6002	TANK-FPRO-6001	TANK-INT-6001
TANK-LOG-6003	TANK-MANV-6001	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	40	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Amphibious Assault Vehicle (AAV) Platoon with associated C2 suite.

---

**TANK-C2-7002:** Conduct Mobile Command and Control (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion and mechanized command and control platforms.

**STANDARD:** To integrate systems, personnel and processes to support command and control of operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize staff sections into mobile echelons.
2. Position mobile echelons for effective C2, mobility and survivability.
3. Establish Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC).
4. Plan and direct Intelligence Collection, Analysis, and Dissemination.
5. Establish mobile Administration and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC).
6. Establish communication with HASS units.
7. Establish systems control.
8. Maintain continuity of operations.
9. Establish local security.
10. Establish procedures for passage of control between echelons.



**REFERENCES:**

1. MCDP 6 Command and Control
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-C2-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	40	Y

NOTES: Linked with COC Operations.

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** CAPSET 4 or CAST trainer can be used to train this task.

---

**TANK-C2-7003:** Command and Control Tactical Logistics Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Command and control for tactical-level logistics is focused on monitoring, coordinating, and executing combat service support for tank battalion tactical operations. Processes, distribution, supply chain management, maintenance management, ammunition management, food service support, health services, administration, etc.

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized tank battalion.

**STANDARD:** Support logistics operations requirements in accordance with MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Participate in Marine Corps Planning Process.
2. Develop processes for a Logistical Operations Center (LOC).
3. Develop processes for combat service support operations.
4. Establish a LOC.
5. Conduct LOC operations.
6. Manage a LOC.
7. Establish communication with higher supporting and supported units.
8. Maintain communications with higher supporting and supported units.
9. Conduct Information management in all aspects of logistical operations.

10. Maintain situational awareness and continuity of operations.
11. Manage combat service support operations.
12. Conduct supply chain management.
13. Conduct maintenance management.
14. Conduct ammunition management.
15. Manage food services.
16. Manage health services.
17. Manage administrative services.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
4. MCDP 4 Logistics
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
8. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-6002

TANK-LOG-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	40	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-C2-7004:** Prepare for Deployment

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** In order to prepare personnel and equipment for deployment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Analyze mission requirements.
2. Conduct deployment or activation preparations based on approved deployment or activation order.
3. Develop pre-deployment training plan.
4. Coordinate requirements with Higher Headquarters.
5. Organize deploying unit(s).
6. Conduct MET-based training and assessment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCDP 2 Intelligence
3. MCDP 4 Logistics
4. MCDP 6 Command and Control
5. MCO 3502.6A Marine Corps Force Generation Process
6. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-32 Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
10. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1812-CMDC-2003	TANK-FSPT-6001	TANK-GNRY-5003
TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6012	

---

**TANK-CSS-7001:** Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given higher headquarters operation order and commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To return the material to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize unit maintenance collection point (UMCP).
2. Provide condition, location and circumstances of damage.
3. Coordinate and dispatch contact team or battle damage assessment and repair assets.
4. Recover and repair equipment.
5. Destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
6. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
2. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

21XX-VOPS-1002                      ORD-MAIN-6001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-VOPS-1005                      1812-VOPS-2002                      TANK-CSS-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-FPRO-7001:** Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct reconnaissance, survey and decontamination operations.
6. Conduct operations in contaminated environments.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for NBC Defense Operations
6. MCWP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6002                      TANK-FPRO-6003                      TANK-FPRO-6004  
TANK-FPRO-6005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

DODIC

QUANTITY

G924 Gren, Hand Riot CS-1 M25A2    20 grenades per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FPRO-7002:** Prepare for an Imminent Chemical or Biological Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Monitor enemy threat posture.
2. Direct appropriate MOPP Level.
3. Plan for decontamination.
4. Organize RSD teams.
5. Designate personnel to augment RSD teams.
6. Prepare assets to limit contamination.
7. Employ early detection devices and equipment.
8. Prepare tanks for combat configuration.
9. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for NBC Defense Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6002 TANK-FPRO-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-FPRO-7003:** React to an Anticipated Chemical or Biological Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion in MOPP 4 with combat configured tanks.

**STANDARD:** To continue assigned mission once contaminated.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Alert the battalion of chemical or biological contamination.
2. Maneuver out of contaminated area if possible.
3. Assess the tactical situation.
4. Recommend a COA.
5. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
6. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
7. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-37.1 MTP for NBC Defense Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6002

TANK-FPRO-6004

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

DODIC

QUANTITY

G924 Gren, Hand Riot CS-1 M25A2 20 grenades per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FPRO-7004:** React to an Unanticipated Chemical or Biological Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To reduce the effects of an enemy chemical or biological attack on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct masking procedures.
2. Direct combat configuration.
3. Alert battalion of chemical or biological contamination.
4. Assess the tactical situation.
5. Apply appropriate MOPP level.
6. Direct course of action.
7. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
8. Initiate procedures to determine agent employed.
9. Maneuver out of contaminated area.
10. Establish hasty decontamination site.
11. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
12. Assign personnel to augment RSD team.
13. Conduct hasty decontamination.
14. Direct MOPP gear exchange.
15. Conduct selective unmasking.
16. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for NBC Defense Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6002                      TANK-FPRO-6005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
G924 Gren, Hand Riot CS-1 M25A2	20 grenades per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FSPT-7001:** Conduct Fire Support Coordination (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish a Fire Support Coordination Center.
2. Conduct fire support planning.
3. Integrate fires with friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.
4. Coordinate and de-conflict fires.
5. Employ fire support assets.
6. Conduct battle damage assessment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
6. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
7. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
8. MCWP 3-43.3 Marine Air-Ground Task Force Fires

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-2001 TANK-FSPT-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	16	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Require Forward Observers from Artillery unit (1 per company), Forward Air Controllers/JTACS (3 per companies that are not T/O; 1 per A/B Cmd), Fire Support Officer (x2) to supplement the FSCC, and (x2) NGLOs for A/B Cmd.

---

**TANK-INT-7001:** Direct Intelligence Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.12.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months



**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To provide accurate and timely intelligence of enemy forces as well as terrain and civil considerations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct intelligence planning.
2. Conduct intelligence collection.
3. Conduct intelligence processing.
4. Conduct intelligence dissemination.
5. Conduct intelligence utilization.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCDP 2 Intelligence
5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. MCTP 2-10A MAGTF Intelligence Collection (Formerly MCWP 2-2)
7. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6001                      TANK-INT-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	40	Y

NOTES: Linked with COC Operations.

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Non-organic collection units/platforms.

---

**TANK-LOG-7004:** Conduct Tactical Logistics (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized tank battalion.

**STANDARD:** To provide logistics support which sustains all necessary operations of the task-organized tank battalion.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct Marine Corps Planning Process.
2. Develop a Logistical Support Plan for a task organized tank battalion.
3. Develop a plan to integrate the functions of logistics into the tank battalion tactical operation.

4. Task-organize battalion combat and field trains according to tactical situation.
5. Determine a position for the combat and field trains.
6. Develop security plan for combat and field trains.
7. Plan tactical movement for the combat and field trains.
8. Plan to emplace the combat and field trains.
9. Plan to displace the combat and field trains.
10. Plan for follow on operations.
11. Develop a plan to treat and evacuate casualties.
12. Develop a plan to process and evacuate enemy prisoners of war.
13. Execute a Logistical Support Plan for a task-organized tank battalion.
14. Integrate the functions of logistics into the tank battalion tactical operation.
15. Conduct tactical movement with the combat and field trains.
16. Employ task-organized combat and field trains according to tactical situation.
17. Execute security plan for combat and field trains.
18. Emplace the combat and field trains.
19. Conceal the combat and field trains.
20. Execute a Logistical Operation Center (all aspects of communication and informational management).
21. Manage a Logistical Operation Center.
22. Displace the combat and field trains.
23. Conduct follow-on operations.
24. Treat and evacuate casualties.
25. Process and evacuate enemy prisoners of war.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
4. MCDP 4 Logistics
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 4-11 MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-6002

TANK-LOG-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	40	Y

NOTES: Linked with Command and Control Tactical Logistics.

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Higher headquarters logistical support.

---

**TANK-MANV-7001:** Occupy an Assembly Area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct reconnaissance to find a suitable location.
2. Friendly forces establish local security.
3. Dispatch quartering party to confirm the location for assembly area.
4. Quartering party marks and guides friendly forces into position.
5. Adjacent units tie in flanks.
6. Prepare defensive fire plans.
7. Establish wire communications.
8. Camouflage positions.
9. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
10. Conduct continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1812-TAC-2001 TANK-MANV-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7002:** Conduct a Movement to Contact (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To gain and maintain contact with enemy forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task-organize into a security force, advanced guard, main body, flank and rear security.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conducts tactical movement.
5. Security force establishes contact, advanced guard fixes enemy forces, and main body maneuvers to destroy the enemy forces.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
7. Prepare for counter-attack.

8. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4000 rounds per Battalion
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	1000 rounds per Battalion
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	1000 rounds per Battalion
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	15000 rounds per Battalion
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	10000 rounds per Battalion
B519 Ctg, 40mm Prac M781 F/M203 Gren Laun	75 rounds per Battalion
B535 Ctg, 40mm White Star Para M583 F/M20	15 rounds per Battalion
B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked	960 rounds per Battalion
B546 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M433 F/M203 Gren Laun	180 rounds per Battalion
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	300 rounds per Battalion
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	50 rounds per Battalion
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	50 rounds per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7003:** Conduct an Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To defeat, destroy or neutralize enemy forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task-organize into an assault force and a support force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Move to attack position.

5. Move to assault position.
6. Breach enemy obstacles (as necessary).
7. Support force establishes a support by fire position.
8. Assault force conducts actions on the objective.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
10. Prepare for counter-attack.
11. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-6002	TANK-FSPT-6001	TANK-INT-6001
TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6013
TANK-MANV-6014	TANK-MANV-6016	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4000 round per Battalion
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	1000 round per Battalion
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	2500 round per Battalion
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	15000 round per Battalion
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	10000 round per Battalion
B519 Ctg, 40mm Prac M781 F/M203 Gren Laun	75 round per Battalion
B535 Ctg, 40mm White Star Para M583 F/M20	15 round per Battalion
B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked	960 rounds per Battalion
B546 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M433 F/M203 Gren Laun	180 rounds per Battalion
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	300 round per Battalion
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	50 round per Battalion
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	20 rounds per Battalion
CA38 Ctg, 120mm Canister M1028	25 rounds per Battalion
WH06- Guided Missile, BTM-71D-3B (TOW-1 Pr	26 missiles per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7004:** Conduct an Exploitation (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion following a successful attack/movement to contact.

**STANDARD:** To continue a successful attack and disorganize enemy forces in depth.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task-organize a designated exploitation force.
2. Conduct offensive forms of maneuver to extend the initial success of the attack.
3. Prevent the enemy from disengaging, withdrawing, or establishing an organized defense.
4. Continue exploitation until friendly forces reach a culmination point or exploitation transitions into a pursuit.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002

TANK-MANV-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	2000 round per Battalion
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	500 round per Battalion
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	1500 round per Battalion
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	8000 round per Battalion
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	2500 round per Battalion
B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked	960 rounds per Battalion
B546 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M433 F/M203 Gren Laun	180 rounds per Battalion
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	28 round per Battalion
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	28 round per Battalion
G940 Gren, Hand Smoke Green M18	10 grenades per Battalion
G945 Gren, Hand Smoke Yellow M18	10 grenades per Battalion
G955 Gren, Hand Smoke Violet M18	10 grenades per Battalion
G982 Gren, Hand Smoke TA M83	10 grenades per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7005:** Conduct a Pursuit (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion following a successful exploitation or attack.

**STANDARD:** To defeat an enemy force attempting to retreat/withdraw.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Fix enemy forces along their escape route with an encircling force.
3. Direct pressure forces maneuvers and destroys fixed enemy forces.
4. Continue pursuit until friendly forces reaches culmination point.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-6002

TANK-MANV-6002

TANK-MANV-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	2000 round per Battalion
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	500 round per Battalion
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	1500 round per Battalion
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	12000 round per Battalion
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	8000 round per Battalion
B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked	960 rounds per Battalion
B546 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M433 F/M203 Gren Laun	180 rounds per Battalion
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	28 round per Battalion
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	28 round per Battalion
L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127	10 projectiles per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7006:** Conduct a Mobile Defense (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To defeat or destroy enemy forces by attacking with a striking force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task-organize into a fixing force and a striking force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Gain and maintain contact with enemy forces.
5. Disrupt enemy forces in the main battle area.
6. Fix enemy forces.
7. Striking force maneuvers against and destroys enemy forces.
8. Striking force continues attack until friendly forces reach culmination point or attack transitions into a pursuit.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-6002

TANK-FSPT-6001

TANK-MANV-6003

TANK-MANV-6006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	2000 round per Battalion
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	500 round per Battalion
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	2500 round per Battalion
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	15000 round per Battalion
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	8000 round per Battalion
B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked	960 rounds per Battalion
B546 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M433 F/M203 Gren Laun	180 rounds per Battalion
C995 Launcher & Ctg, 84mm M136 (AT-4)	6 missiles per Battalion
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	28 round per Battalion
L305. SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	10 signals per Battalion



L307 Sig, Illum White Star Cluster M159      10 signals per Battalion  
L314 Sig, Illum Green Star Cluster M125      10 signals per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7007:** Conduct an Area Defense (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To deny enemy forces from specific terrain or avenue of approach for a specific time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task-organize into a defending force and a counterattack force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of Area of Operations (AO).
5. Conduct engagement area development.
6. Occupy and establish security area, main battle area, and rear area.
7. Conduct continuing actions.
8. Defend against enemy attack.
9. Counterattack against enemy forces.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1812-TAC-2009

TANK-FSPT-6001

TANK-MANV-6006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4000 round per Battalion
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	1000 round per Battalion
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	3000 round per Battalion
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	20000 round per Battalion
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	11500 round per Battalion

B519 Ctg, 40mm Prac M781 F/M203 Gren Laun	50 round per Battalion
B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked	960 rounds per Battalion
B546 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M433 F/M203 Gren Laun	180 rounds per Battalion
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	100 round per Battalion
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	40 round per Battalion
C995 Launcher & Ctg, 84mm M136 (AT-4)	6 rockets per Battalion
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	44 rounds per Battalion
CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028	15 rounds per Battalion
G940 Gren, Hand Smoke Green M18	10 grenades per Battalion
G945 Gren, Hand Smoke Yellow M18	10 grenades per Battalion
G955 Gren, Hand Smoke Violet M18	10 grenades per Battalion
G982 Gren, Hand Smoke TA M83	10 grenades per Battalion
L305. SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	10 signals per Battalion
L307. SIGNAL , ILLUM WHT STAR CLSTR M18A1	10 signals per Battalion
L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127	10 signals per Battalion
L314 Sig, Illum Green Star Cluster M125	10 signals per Battalion
WH05 Guided Missile, BTM-71E-1B (TOW Prac	26 missiles per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7008:** Conduct a Retrograde (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Determine method of retrograde.
3. Task-organize friendly forces.
4. Issue orders.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Break contact, if necessary, from enemy forces.
7. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
------------------	--------------------	------------------	------------------------	--------------	-----------

Partial      S/L                      CACCTUS                      Unit Hours                      8                      Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7009:**    Conduct a Screen (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    12 months

**CONDITION:**    Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:**    To observe, identify, and report enemy actions to the protected force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task-organize friendly forces.
3. Array forces.
4. Observe and identify enemy forces.
5. Send reports.
6. Engage enemy reconnaissance units, as required, without becoming decisively engaged.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

SCT-MANV-5012                      TANK-FPRO-6001                      TANK-MANV-6008  
TOW-MANV-5018

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7010:**    Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Exchange liaison personnel between relieving unit and unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Relieving unit assumes command of AO.
7. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7011:** Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Conduct link-up procedures.
3. Moving unit maintains gun tube orientation towards last known enemy

- location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
  5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.
  6. Moving unit reports completion upon reaching the Battle Handover Line.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7012:** Conduct Breaching Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To breach a complex obstacle.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify obstacle and points of penetration.
2. Task-organize into support force, assault force and breach force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Support element secures breach site by establishing suppression and obscuration at breach site.
5. Breach force reduces obstacle and proofs / marks lanes.
6. Assault force maneuvers through proofed lanes and assaults through and secures the far side objectives.
7. Remaining friendly forces move through proofed lanes and continues mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-8001

INF-MAN-8208

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1003	1802-CBTS-2002	1802-VOPS-2002
1812-CBTS-2001	1812-CBTS-2002	1812-TAC-2013
TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6016	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	2000 round per Battalion
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	500 round per Battalion
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	2000 round per Battalion
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	15000 round per Battalion
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	10000 round per Battalion
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	26 round per Battalion
C995 Launcher & Ctg, 84mm M136 (AT-4)	6 rockets per Battalion
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	30 rounds per Battalion
L594 Sim, Proj Ground Burst M115A2	15 rounds per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Obstacle Clearing Detachment (OCD).

---

**TANK-MANV-7013:** Support Amphibious Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.12.2                      MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** Advise in the development of amphibious landing plans in order to provide rapid build-up of combat power ashore.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Train capable forces.
2. Provide task-organized forces capable of conducting ship-to-shore movement.
3. Participate in amphibious operations planning.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations

3. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
4. JP 5-0 Joint Operation Planning
5. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
7. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
8. MCRP 3-31.1A Employment of Landing Craft Air Cushion (LCAC)
9. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
10. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
11. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
14. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
15. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
16. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
17. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
18. TM 9-2540-206-12&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Deep Water Fording Kit)

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** TANK-VOPS-3002

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-8301                      INF-MAN-8306

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6012

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7014:** Direct Reconnaissance Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.12.2                      MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To provide critical information relative to enemy situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct intelligence preparation.
2. Task-organize.
3. Develop emergency extraction plan.
4. Utilize UAS and other collection assets.
5. Collect and report required information.
6. Send and receive other required reports.
7. Develop/refine information/situation as required.
8. Conduct debrief.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
6. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-INT-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	8	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-7015:** Conduct a Guard (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To prevent the lead elements of an enemy ground force from engaging the protected unit with direct fires for a predetermined period of time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task-organize friendly forces.
3. Array forces.
4. Observe and identify enemy forces.
5. Send reports.
6. Engage lead elements of an enemy ground force in order to prevent them from engaging the protected unit with direct fires.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6015 TOW-MANV-5019



SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	4000	4-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	4001	4-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. . . . .	4002	4-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY. . . . .	4003	4-2
RESTRICTIVE/SEVERELY RESTRICTED TERRAIN TRAINING. . . . .	4004	4-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	4005	4-3
COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . .	4006	4-4

## TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

### CHAPTER 4

#### COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**4000. PURPOSE.** This chapter contains the company level tank unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies METs and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

#### **4001. EVENT CODING**

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TANK" indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the company level are:

C2 - Command and Control	INT - Intelligence
CSS - Combat Service Support	LOG - Logistics
FPRO - Force Protection	MANV - Maneuver
FSPT - Fire Support	

c. Field three - This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events.

#### **4002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.**

Each Event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

#### **4003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY**

1. A Tank Company serves as the Ground Combat Element's (GCEs) primary armored maneuver element capable of operating as a tank-pure or task-organized company team. It is uniquely organized and equipped to conduct

maneuver warfare and integrate fires to shatter the enemy's cohesion through a variety of rapid, focused, and unexpected actions which create a turbulent and rapidly deteriorating situation with which the enemy cannot cope.

2. Provides the supported commander an expeditionary, all-weather, day, night, CBRN capable, and armor protected maneuver element.
3. Employs mobile command and control with an organic Fire Support Team.
4. Capable of logistically supporting a reinforced mechanized company team.
5. Uniquely suited to conduct movement to contacts and attacks, and support a higher headquarters exploitation and pursuit by conducting offensive forms of maneuver.
6. Capable of conducting security operations independently or as part of a larger force.
7. Capable of conducting forcible entry.
8. Optimally suited to conduct maneuver in support of defensive operations to defeat enemy forces or retain and control terrain through maneuver and long-range, precision direct fire.
9. Uniquely suited to support all offensive and defensive operations in a CBRN environment.
10. Prepares for, participates in, and supports amphibious planning and operations.

#### **4004. RESTRICTIVE/SEVERELY RESTRICTED TERRAIN TRAINING.**

To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train in restrictive/severely restricted terrain as a task-organized unit. Units should strive to conduct all events in this chapter integrating non-organic assets in multiple operating environments.

#### **4005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS			
Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
TANK-C2-6002		Conduct Mobile Command and Control (S/L)	4-4
TANK-CSS-6001		Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations	4-5
TANK-FPRO-6001		Conduct Local Security Operations	4-6
TANK-FPRO-6002		Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment	4-7
TANK-FPRO-6003		Prepare for an Imminent Chemical or Biological Attack	4-7
TANK-FPRO-6004		React to an Anticipated Chemical or Biological Attack	4-8
TANK-FPRO-6005		React to an Unanticipated Chemical or Biological Attack	4-9
<b>TANK-FSPT-6001</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Employ a Fire Support Team (S/L)</b>	4-10

TANK-INT-6001		Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace	4-11
TANK-LOG-6003		Conduct Tactical Logistics (S/L)	4-12
TANK-MANV-6001		Occupy an Assembly Area	4-13
<b>TANK-MANV-6002</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct a Movement to Contact (S/L)</b>	4-14
TANK-MANV-6003		Conduct an Attack (S/L)	4-15
<b>TANK-MANV-6006</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct a Position Defense (S/L)</b>	4-16
TANK-MANV-6007		Conduct a Retrograde (S/L)	4-17
TANK-MANV-6008		Conduct a Screen (S/L)	4-18
TANK-MANV-6009		Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)	4-19
TANK-MANV-6010		Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)	4-20
<b>TANK-MANV-6011</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Breaching Operations (S/L)</b>	4-21
<b>TANK-MANV-6012</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Support Amphibious Operations</b>	4-22
TANK-MANV-6013		Conduct a Support By Fire (S/L)	4-23
TANK-MANV-6014		Conduct an Attack By Fire (S/L)	4-24
TANK-MANV-6015		Conduct a Guard (S/L)	4-25
TANK-MANV-6016		Serve as a Breach Force (S/L)	4-26

#### 4006. COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**TANK-C2-6002:** Conduct Mobile Command and Control (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To integrate systems, personnel and processes to support command and control of operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize headquarters elements to facilitate command and control.
2. Position headquarters elements for effective C2, mobility and survivability.
3. Coordinate fire support efforts.
4. Plan and direct efforts in support of higher headquarters collection plan.
5. Coordinate tactical logistics.
6. Maintain communication with Higher, Adjacent, Subordinate, and Supporting (HASS) units.
7. Maintain continuity of operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCDP 6 Command and Control
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-INT-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-7002	TANK-LOG-7004	TANK-MANV-7002
TANK-MANV-7003	TANK-MANV-7006	TANK-MANV-7012

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	8	Y
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	N

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-CSS-6001:** Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given higher headquarters operation order and commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To return the material to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize the company combat trains.
2. Platoons provide condition, location and circumstances of damage.
3. Coordinate and dispatch contact team or battle damage assessment and repair assets.
4. Recover and repair equipment.
5. Destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
6. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
2. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
10. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

21XX-VOPS-1002                      ORD-MAIN-6001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-VOPS-1005                      1812-VOPS-2002                      TANK-CSS-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**    TANK-CSS-7001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-FPRO-6001:**    Conduct Local Security Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    12 months

**CONDITION:**    Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:**    To protect troops, facilities and equipment from enemy attacks.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Avoid detection by enemy forces.
2. Establish observation posts.
3. Deceive enemy forces of friendly locations and intentions.
4. Locate enemy forces in the immediate vicinity.
5. Determine locations and intentions of enemy forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

SCT-MANV-5004                      SCT-MANV-5012                      TANK-MANV-5019  
TOW-MANV-5004                      TOW-MANV-5018                      TOW-MANV-5019

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7009                      TANK-MANV-7015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**    Scout and TOW platoons if available can be used ISO establishing local security and observation posts.

---

**TANK-FPRO-6002:** Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Incorporate CBRN threat analysis into troop leading procedures.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct reconnaissance, survey and decontamination operations.
6. Conduct operations in contaminated environments.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for NBC Defense Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

SCT-FPRO-5001	TANK-FPRO-5003	TANK-FPRO-5004
TANK-FPRO-5005	TANK-MANV-5008	TOW-FPRO-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-FPRO-7001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
G924 Gren, Hand Riot CS-1 M25A2	10 grenades per Company

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FPRO-6003:** Prepare for an Imminent Chemical or Biological Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.



**STANDARD:** To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Monitor enemy threat posture.
2. Direct appropriate MOPP Level.
3. Organize RSD teams.
4. Designate personnel to augment RSD teams.
5. Prepare assets to limit contamination.
6. Recommend possible decontamination sites.
7. Employ early detection devices and equipment.
8. Prepare tanks for combat configuration.
9. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for NBC Defense Operations
6. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-FPRO-5003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-7001                      TANK-FPRO-7002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-FPRO-6004:** React to an Anticipated Chemical or Biological Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company in MOPP 4 with combat configured tanks.

**STANDARD:** To continue assigned mission once contaminated.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Alert the company of chemical or biological contamination.
2. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
3. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
4. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for NBC Defense Operations
6. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

SCT-FPRO-5001                      TANK-FPRO-5004                      TOW-FPRO-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-7001                      TANK-FPRO-7003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
G924 Gren, Hand Riot CS-1 M25A2	5 grenades per Company

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FPRO-6005:** React to an Unanticipated Chemical or Biological Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To reduce the effects of an enemy chemical or biological attack on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct masking procedures.
2. Direct combat configuration.
3. Alert company of chemical or biological contamination.
4. Assess the tactical situation.
5. Apply appropriate MOPP level.
6. Recommend course of action.
7. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
8. Initiate procedures to determine agent employed.
9. Maneuver out of contaminated area.
10. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
11. Initiate individual decontamination procedures.

12. Recommend hasty decontamination site to higher.
13. Assign personnel to augment RSD team.
14. Conduct hasty decontamination.
15. Conduct MOPP gear exchange.
16. Conduct selective unmasking.
17. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for NBC Defense Operations
6. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

SCT-FPRO-5001

TANK-FPRO-5005

TOW-FPRO-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-FPRO-7001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

DODIC

QUANTITY

G924 Gren, Hand Riot CS-1 M25A2 5 grenades per Company

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FSPT-6001:** Employ a Fire Support Team (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To provide timely and accurate fires in support of ground scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct fire support planning.
2. Make contact with enemy forces.
3. Execute fire support plan.
4. Assess effects of fires.
5. Report Battle Damage Assessment (BDA) to higher.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-CBTS-2001	1812-CBTS-2003
SCT-FSPT-5001	TANK-FSPT-5001	TOW-FSPT-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-7001	TANK-MANV-7002	TANK-MANV-7003
TANK-MANV-7004	TANK-MANV-7005	TANK-MANV-7006
TANK-MANV-7007	TANK-MANV-7012	TANK-MANV-7015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	SAVT	Team Hours	8	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

---

**TANK-INT-6001:** Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To analyze the adversary and environment in a specific geographic area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Define the battlespace environment.
2. Describe the battlespace effects.
3. Evaluate the adversary.
4. Determine adversary courses of action.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-INT-1001	1802-INT-1002	1812-INT-2001
SCT-INT-5002	TANK-INT-5001	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-INT-7001

---

**TANK-LOG-6003:** Conduct Tactical Logistics (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To provide logistics support which sustains all necessary operations of the tank company or tank task-organized force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Develop a Logistical Support Plan.
3. Develop a plan to integrate the functions of logistics.
4. Develop a plan to conduct Information management (track decision points, CCIR's, combat power, track higher, supported and supporting units).
5. Develop security plan.
6. Develop a plan to maintain situational awareness and continuity of operations.
7. Develop plan to communicate with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
8. Plan tactical movement.
9. Plan to emplace.
10. Plan to displace.
11. Plan for follow on operations.
12. Develop a plan to treat and evacuate casualties.
13. Execute a Logistical Support Plan.
14. Integrate the functions of logistics.
15. Conduct tactical movement.
16. Employ according to the tactical situation.
17. Execute security plan.
18. Emplace.
19. Conceal.
20. Conduct Information management (track decision points, CCIR's, combat power, track higher, supported and supporting units).
21. Maintain communication with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
22. Displace.
23. Conduct follow-on operations.
24. Treat and evacuate casualties.
25. Search, Silence, Segregate, Safeguard, Speed, and Tag enemy prisoners of war.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCDP 2 Intelligence

4. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
5. MCDP 4 Logistics
6. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-EXPD-2003	1812-EXPD-2002	SCT-LOG-5001
TANK-LOG-5001	TOW-LOG-5001	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-7003	TANK-LOG-7004
--------------	---------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	4	Y

---

**TANK-MANV-6001:** Occupy an Assembly Area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1	MCT 1.6.4
-----------	-----------

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct reconnaissance to find a suitable location.
2. Friendly forces establish local security.
3. Dispatch quartering party to confirm the location for assembly area.
4. Quartering party marks and guides friendly forces into position.
5. Adjacent units tie in flanks.
6. Prepare defensive fire plans.
7. Establish wire communications.
8. Camouflage positions.
9. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
10. Conduct continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1812-TAC-2001	SCT-MANV-5005	TANK-MANV-5001
---------------	---------------	----------------

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-7001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-6002:** Conduct a Movement to Contact (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To gain and maintain contact with enemy forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Task-organize into an advanced guard and main body.
3. Conduct fire support planning.
4. Issue orders.
5. Conduct tactical movement.
6. Integrate fires in support of maneuver.
7. Advanced guard establishes contact and fixes enemy forces.
8. Main body maneuvers and destroys enemy forces.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-5001

TANK-GNRY-5003

TANK-MANV-5003

TANK-MANV-5004

TANK-MANV-5005

TANK-MANV-5006

TANK-MANV-5007

TANK-MANV-5010

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-7002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4000 round per Company
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	1000 round per Company
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	1000 round per Company
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	3000 round per Company
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	2800 round per Company
B519 Ctg, 40mm Prac M781 F/M203 Gren Laun	25 round per Company
B535 Ctg, 40mm White Star Para M583 F/M20	5 round per Company
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	300 round per Company
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	50 round per Company
CA38 Ctg, 120mm Canister M1028	14 rounds per Battalion

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-6003:** Conduct an Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To defeat, destroy or neutralize enemy forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine form of maneuver.
3. Conduct fire support planning.
4. Task-organize into an assault force, support force, and a reserve force/breach force.
5. Move to attack position.
6. Move to assault position.
7. Integrate fires in support of maneuver.
8. Breach enemy obstacles (as required).
9. Support force establishes a support by fire position.
10. Assault force conducts actions on the objective.
11. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
12. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-7001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-5001	TANK-FSPT-6001	TANK-GNRY-5003
TANK-INT-6001	TANK-MANV-5003	TANK-MANV-5004
TANK-MANV-5005	TANK-MANV-5006	TANK-MANV-5007



TANK-MANV-5010

TANK-MANV-5011

TANK-MANV-5012

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7002

TANK-MANV-7003

TANK-MANV-7004

TANK-MANV-7005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4000 round per Company
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	1000 round per Company
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	1000 round per Company
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	3500 round per Company
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	3000 round per Company
B519 Ctg, 40mm Prac M781 F/M203 Gren Laun	25 round per Company
B535 Ctg, 40mm White Star Para M583 F/M20	5 round per Company
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	300 round per Company
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	50 round per Company
CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028	14 round per Company

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Indirect fire support and a mechanized infantry company are required for this event.

---

**TANK-MANV-6006:** Conduct a Position Defense (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To deny enemy forces (up to battalion size) from specific terrain for a specific time by defending in sector, strongpoint, battle position, or perimeter.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Task-organize into a defending force.
3. Conduct fire support planning.
4. Allocate resources.

5. Conduct engagement area development.
6. Defend.
7. Counterattack.
8. Consolidate and reorganize.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-7101

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-2001	1802-TAC-1005	1812-CMDC-2004
1812-TAC-2009	TANK-FPRO-5001	TANK-FSPT-5001
TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-5001	TANK-MANV-5016

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7006	TANK-MANV-7007
----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4000 round per Company
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	1000 round per Company
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	1200 round per Company
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	3300 round per Company
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	1900 round per Company
B519 Ctg, 40mm Prac M781 F/M203 Gren Laun	50 round per Company
B535 Ctg, 40mm White Star Para M583 F/M20	20 round per Company
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	100 round per Company
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	58 round per Company
L305. SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	10 signals per Company
L307. SIGNAL , ILLUM WHT STAR CLSTR M18A1	10 signals per Company
L314 Sig, Illum Green Star Cluster M125	10 signals per Company

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-6007:** Conduct a Retrograde (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine method of retrograde.
3. Task-organize friendly forces.
4. Integrate fires.
5. Break contact, if necessary, from enemy forces.
6. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
8. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5018

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-7008

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-6008:** Conduct a Screen (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To observe, identify, and report enemy actions to the protected force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.

2. Task-organize friendly forces.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Array forces.
5. Observe and identify enemy forces.
6. Send reports.
7. Engage enemy reconnaissance units, as required, without becoming decisively engaged.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

SCT-MANV-5012                      TANK-MANV-5019                      TOW-MANV-5018

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7003                      TANK-MANV-7007                      TANK-MANV-7009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	1000 round per Company
A080 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200	2000 round per Company

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Tow and Scout platoons if available can be used for this task.

---

**TANK-MANV-6009:** Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct liaison between relieving unit and unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Relieving unit assumes command of AO.
7. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5020                      TANK-MANV-5021

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**    TANK-MANV-7010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-6010:**    Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    12 months

**CONDITION:**    Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:**    To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Conduct link-up procedures.
3. Moving unit maintains gun tube orientation towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.
6. Moving unit reports completion upon reaching Battle Handover Line.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5020

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-7011

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-6011:** Conduct Breaching Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To reduce an obstacle and provide a lane for passage of friendly units.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Task-organize into support force, assault force and breach force.
3. Identify obstacle and points of penetration.
4. Support element secures breach site by establishing suppression and obscuration at breach site.
5. Breach force reduces obstacle and proofs / marks lanes.
6. Assault force maneuvers through proofed lanes and assaults through to far side objectives.
7. Remaining friendly forces move through proofed lanes and continues mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-7001                      INF-MAN-7208

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1003	1812-CBTS-2001	1812-CBTS-2002
1812-VOPS-2006	TANK-FSPT-5001	TANK-GNRY-5003

TANK-MANV-5022

TANK-MANV-5028

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7003

TANK-MANV-7012

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4000 round per Company
A063 Ctg, 5.56mm Tracer M856	1000 round per Company
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	700 round per Company
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	3600 round per Company
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	1900 round per Company
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	23 round per Company
L594 Sim, Proj Ground Burst M115A2	15 rounds per Company

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** ABV/OCD/MCM detachment, indirect fire support, and a mechanized infantry company are required for this event.

---

**TANK-MANV-6012:** Support Amphibious Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.12.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To enable rapid build-up of combat power ashore.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Advise in the development of an amphibious landing plan.
2. Prepare equipment for amphibious operations.
3. Advise in development of surface landing plan.
4. Task-organize into landing serials.
5. Conduct troop leading procedures.
6. Conduct ship-to-shore movement.
7. Continue operations ashore.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
3. JP 5-0 Joint Operation Planning

4. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
6. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
7. MCRP 3-31.1A Employment of Landing Craft Air Cushion (LCAC)
8. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
9. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
13. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
14. TM 08953A 14&P Tank Deep Water Fording Kit
15. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
16. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** TANK-VOPS-3002

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-7301                      INF-MAN-7306

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-EXPD-2002                      TANK-MANV-5023

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-7013

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Fording kits and Landing Crafts (LCU/LCAC) required

---

**TANK-MANV-6013:** Conduct a Support By Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To engage the enemy with direct fire in support of a maneuvering force in order to ensure their freedom of movement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine location of support by fire.
3. Integrate fires in support of maneuver.
4. Occupy support by fire location.
5. Establish direct fire dominance.
6. Control direct fires.
7. Coordinate with supported unit.

**REFERENCES:**



1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-7001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-TAC-1004
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-TAC-2010	TANK-FSPT-5001
TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-5011	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7003	TANK-MANV-7004	TANK-MANV-7005
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-6014:** Conduct an Attack By Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To engage the enemy with direct fire and/or indirect fires without closing in order to destroy, neutralize, defeat, or fix.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine location of attack by fire.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Occupy attack by fire location.
5. Control direct fires.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-TAC-1004
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2010
TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-5010	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7002	TANK-MANV-7003	TANK-MANV-7006
TANK-MANV-7007		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-6015:** Conduct a Guard (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To defeat, repel, or fix the lead elements of an enemy ground force in order to prevent them from engaging the protected unit with direct fires for a predetermined period of time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Task-organize friendly forces.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Array forces.
5. Observe and identify enemy forces.
6. Send reports.
7. Engage lead elements of an enemy ground force in order to prevent them from engaging the protected unit with direct fires.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-TAC-1004
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2010
TANK-FSPT-5001	TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-5005
TANK-MANV-5012		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7002	TANK-MANV-7003	TANK-MANV-7004
TANK-MANV-7005	TANK-MANV-7006	TANK-MANV-7007
TANK-MANV-7015		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	1000 rounds per Company
A080 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200	2000 rounds per Company

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-6016:** Serve as a Breach Force (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized company.

**STANDARD:** To establish two lanes through an obstacle in order to provide higher headquarters freedom of movement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Participate in fire support planning.
3. Task-organize.
4. Identify obstacle and points of penetration.
5. Establish near-side security.
6. Reduce enemy obstacle.
7. Mark lanes.
8. Proof lanes through enemy obstacle.
9. Establish far-side security.
10. Send reports.
11. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-7001

INF-MAN-7208

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1003

1802-VOPS-2002

1812-CBTS-2001

1812-TAC-2013

1812-VOPS-2006

TANK-MANV-5022

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-7003

TANK-MANV-7012

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** ABV/OCD/MCM detachment needed for training.

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	5000	5-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	5001	5-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. . . . .	5002	5-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY. . . . .	5003	5-2
RESTRICTIVE/SEVERELY RESTRICTED TERRAIN TRAINING. . . . .	5004	5-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	5005	5-3
PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . .	5006	5-4

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**5000. PURPOSE.** This chapter contains all platoon level tank unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to platoons and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

**5001. EVENT CODING**

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TANK" indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the platoon level are:

CSS - Combat Service Support	GNNY - Gunnery
FPRO - Force Protection	LOG - Logistics
FSPT - Fire Support	MANV - Maneuver
INT - Intelligence	

c. Field three - This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events.

**5002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.** Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

**5003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY**

1. A Tank platoon serves as the commanders primary armored maneuver element capable of operating as a tank-pure or task-organized platoon. It is uniquely organized and equipped to conduct maneuver warfare and integrate fires to shatter the enemy's cohesion through a variety of rapid, focused, and unexpected actions, which create a turbulent and rapidly deteriorating situation with which the enemy cannot cope.

2. Provides the supported commander an expeditionary, all weather, day, night, CBRN capable, and armor protected maneuver element.
3. Employs long range VHF capable of controlling maneuver and fires simultaneously.
4. Ideally suited to rapidly identify and provide precision target location through its advanced optics and far-target locator.
5. Uniquely suited to conduct movement to contacts and attacks, and support a higher headquarters exploitation and pursuit by conducting offensive forms of maneuver.
6. Capable of conducting security operations independently or as part of a larger force.
7. Capable of conducting forcible entry.
8. Optimally suited to conduct maneuver in support of defensive operations to defeat enemy forces or retain and control terrain through maneuver and long-range, precision direct fire.
9. Uniquely suited to support all offensive and defensive operations in a CBRN environment.
10. Prepares for, participates in, and supports amphibious planning and operations.

**5004. RESTRICTIVE/SEVERELY RESTRICTED TERRAIN TRAINING.** To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train in restrictive/severely restricted terrain as a task-organized unit. Units should strive to conduct all events in this chapter integrating non-organic assets in multiple operating environments.

**5005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS			
Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
TANK-CSS-5001		Conduct Recovery Operations	5-4
TANK-FPRO-5001		Conduct Local Security Operations (S/L)	5-5
TANK-FPRO-5003		Prepare for an Imminent Chemical or Biological Attack	5-6
TANK-FPRO-5004		React to an Anticipated Chemical or Biological Attack (S/L)	5-7
TANK-FPRO-5005		React to an Unanticipated Chemical or Biological Attack (S/L)	5-8
TANK-FSPT-5001		Employ Fire Support Assets (S/L)	5-9
TANK-GNRY-5001		Conduct Tank Table X (S/L)	5-10
TANK-GNRY-5002		Conduct Tank Table XI (L)	5-11
<b>TANK-GNRY-5003</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Tank Table XII (L)</b>	5-12

TANK-INT-5001		Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace	5-13
TANK-INT-5002		Occupy an Observation Post	5-14
TANK-LOG-5001		Conduct Resupply Operations	5-15
TANK-MANV-5001		Occupy an Assembly Area	5-15
TANK-MANV-5002		Conduct a Tactical Road March (S/L)	5-16
TANK-MANV-5003		Conduct a Change of Formation (S/L)	5-17
TANK-MANV-5004		Conduct a Contact Drill (S/L)	5-18
TANK-MANV-5005		Conduct an Action Drill (S/L)	5-19
TANK-MANV-5006		React to Indirect Fire (S/L)	5-19
TANK-MANV-5007		React to an Air Attack (S/L)	5-20
TANK-MANV-5008		React to a Nuclear Attack (S/L)	5-21
TANK-MANV-5010		Conduct an Attack by Fire (S/L)	5-22
TANK-MANV-5011		Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)	5-23
TANK-MANV-5012		Conduct an Assault (S/L)	5-24
TANK-MANV-5013		Conduct a Bypass (S/L)	5-25
TANK-MANV-5014		Conduct a Reconnaissance by Fire (S/L)	5-26
TANK-MANV-5015		Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization (S/L)	5-27
TANK-MANV-5016		Defend a Battle Position (S/L)	5-28
TANK-MANV-5017		Conduct a Delay (S/L)	5-29
TANK-MANV-5018		Conduct a Withdrawal (S/L)	5-30
TANK-MANV-5019		Conduct a Screen (S/L)	5-31
TANK-MANV-5020		Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)	5-32
TANK-MANV-5021		Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)	5-33
TANK-MANV-5022		Conduct In-stride Breach (S/L)	5-33
<b>TANK-MANV-5023</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Support an Amphibious Assault</b>	5-34
TANK-MANV-5025		Conduct a Tactical Movement (S/L)	5-36
TANK-MANV-5028		Serve as a Breach Force (S/L)	5-36

#### 5006. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**TANK-CSS-5001:** Conduct Recovery Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon with a disabled tank.

**STANDARD:** To return the disabled Tank to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task-organize platoon.
2. Vehicle commanders provide condition, location and circumstances of damage.
3. Conduct assessment and dispatch recovery team.
4. Recover or repair equipment.
5. Destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
6. Provide updates to higher headquarters.



**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
2. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-VOPS-1005                      1812-VOPS-2002                      TANK-CSS-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**    TANK-CSS-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-FPRO-5001:**    Conduct Local Security Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    12 months

**CONDITION:**    Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:**    To protect troops, facilities and equipment from enemy attacks.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Avoid detection by enemy forces.
2. Establish an observation post.
3. Deceive enemy forces of friendly locations and intentions.
4. Locate enemy forces in the immediate vicinity.
5. Determine locations and intentions of enemy forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-INT-1001                      1802-INT-1002                      1802-TAC-1003  
1812-INT-2001                      1812-TAC-2007

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**    TANK-FPRO-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	4000 rounds per Platoon
A080 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200	8000 rounds per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-FPRO-5003:** Prepare for an Imminent Chemical or Biological Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of an enemy chemical or biological attack on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Apply appropriate MOPP Level.
2. Designate personal to augment RSD teams.
3. Prepare assets to limit contamination.
4. Employ early detection devices and equipment.
5. Prepare tanks for combat configuration.
6. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-INT-1001	1802-INT-1002	1812-CMDC-2001
1812-INT-2001	TANK-FPRO-4001	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6002

TANK-FPRO-6003

---

**TANK-FPRO-5004:** React to an Anticipated Chemical or Biological Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon in MOPP 4 with combat configured tanks.

**STANDARD:** To continue assigned mission once contaminated.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Alert the platoon of chemical or biological contamination.
2. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
3. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
4. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-INT-1001

1802-INT-1002

1812-CMDC-2001

1812-INT-2001

TANK-FPRO-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6002

TANK-FPRO-6004

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FPRO-5005:** React to an Unanticipated Chemical or Biological Attack  
(S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To reduce the effects of an enemy chemical or biological attack on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct masking procedures.
2. Direct combat configuration.
3. Alert platoon of chemical or biological contamination.
4. Assess the tactical situation.
5. Apply appropriate MOPP level.
6. Recommend course of action.
7. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
8. Initiate procedures to determine agent employed.
9. Maneuver out of contaminated area.
10. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
11. Initiate individual decontamination procedures.
12. Recommend hasty decontamination site to higher.
13. Assign personnel to augment RSD team.
14. Conduct hasty decontamination.
15. Receive MOPP gear exchange.
16. Conduct selective unmasking.
17. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-FPRO-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6002 TANK-FPRO-6005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FSPT-5001:** Employ Fire Support Assets (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct fire support planning.
2. Make contact with enemy forces.
3. Execute fire support plan.
4. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCRP 3-16.6 Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001 1802-CBTS-2001 1812-CBTS-2003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-6001	TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003
TANK-MANV-6006	TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6013
TANK-MANV-6015	TANK-MANV-6016	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-GNRY-5001:** Conduct Tank Table X (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S) :**

MCT 1.1                      MCT 1.12.2                      MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table X is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

**REFERENCES :**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1008	1802-TAC-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2010
TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003
TANK-GNRY-3004		

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6008	TANK-MANV-6014	TANK-MANV-6015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

### SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	5	Y

NOTES: Linked to TANK-GNRY-5003: Conduct Tank Table XII

ORDNANCE:

DODIC

QUANTITY

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS :**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

**TANK-GNRY-5002:** Conduct Tank Table XI (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S) :**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the gunnery and tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

**REFERENCES :**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-GNRY-5001
----------------	----------------	----------------

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1008	1802-TAC-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2010
TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003
TANK-GNRY-3004		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6013	TANK-MANV-6014	TANK-MANV-6015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	5	Y

NOTES: Linked to TANK-GNRY-5003: Conduct Tank Table XII

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	400 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 round per Platoon
AA38 Ctg, .50 Cal SLAP-T	32 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

---

**TANK-GNRY-5003:** Conduct Tank Table XII (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1 MCT 1.12.2 MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table XII is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the gunnery and tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010 TANK-GNRY-4003 TANK-GNRY-5001  
TANK-GNRY-5002



**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1008	1802-TAC-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-RNGE-2001
1812-RNGE-2002	1812-TAC-2010	1812-TRNG-2001
1812-TRNG-2002	1812-TRNG-2003	1812-TRNG-2004
TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003
TANK-GNRY-3004		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6013	TANK-MANV-6014	TANK-MANV-6015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	2800 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	1600 round per Platoon
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	20 round per Platoon
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	8 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).  
Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

---

**TANK-INT-5001:** Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To analyze the adversary and environment in a specific geographic area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Define the battlespace environment.
2. Describe the battlespace effects.

3. Evaluate the adversary.
4. Determine adversary courses of action.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-INT-1001                      1802-INT-1002                      1812-INT-2001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-6002	TANK-FPRO-6001	TANK-FPRO-6002
TANK-FSPT-6001	TANK-INT-6001	TANK-MANV-6002
TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006	TANK-MANV-6007
TANK-MANV-6008	TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6012
TANK-MANV-6015	TANK-MANV-6016	

---

**TANK-INT-5002:** Occupy an Observation Post

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To observe and report all activity to higher.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Move by cover and concealed route to the vicinity of observation post.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of tentative observation post.
3. Occupy observation post.
4. Establish security.
5. Establish communications.
6. Report activity to higher.
7. Move observation post as required.
8. Execute evacuation plan as required.
9. Execute relief actions or de-establish observation post.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-INT-1001                      1802-INT-1002                      1812-INT-2001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6001	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6008	TANK-MANV-6015	

**TANK-LOG-5001:** Conduct Resupply Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To replenish all classes of supply in order to maintain combat power.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Submit logistics reports to higher headquarters.
2. Coordinate with company trains to conduct resupply.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Conduct resupply via tailgate or service stations methods.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1812-LOG-2002 TANK-LOG-4001 TANK-MANV-4012

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-LOG-6003 TANK-MANV-6002 TANK-MANV-6003  
TANK-MANV-6006 TANK-MANV-6008 TANK-MANV-6012  
TANK-MANV-6015

---

**TANK-MANV-5001:** Occupy an Assembly Area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Friendly forces establish local security.
2. Adjacent units tie in flanks.
3. Establish observation post.
4. Establish wire communications.
5. Prepare sketch cards and fire plans.
6. Camouflage positions.
7. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
8. Conduct continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-INT-1001	1802-INT-1002	1802-REC-1001
1812-INT-2001	1812-TAC-2001	1812-TAC-2005
TANK-MANV-4012		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6001	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6016	

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Scout and TOW platoons if available can be used ISO establishing local security and observation posts on perimeter of AA.

---

**TANK-MANV-5002:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To move along a designated route and arrange forces according to enemy situation and terrain.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine formation, movement technique, speed and dispersion.
3. Determine order of march.
4. Issue orders.
5. Conduct movement along assigned route.
6. Implement direct fire plan.
7. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
8. Conduct short halts as required.
9. Conduct battle drills as required.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-CBTS-2001	1812-CBTS-2003
1812-CMDC-1001	1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2004
1812-TAC-2006	TANK-MANV-4001	TANK-MANV-4002
TANK-MANV-4003	TANK-MANV-4004	TANK-MANV-4012

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002                      TANK-MANV-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	4000 rounds per Platoon
A080 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200	8000 rounds per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**TANK-MANV-5003:** Conduct a Change of Formation (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To respond to a change in terrain or enemy situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Determine appropriate formation.
2. Issue orders.
3. Execute directed formation.
4. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CMDC-1003	1802-TAC-1002	1812-CMDC-1001
1812-TAC-1001	TANK-MANV-4001	TANK-MANV-4002
TANK-MANV-4012		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-LOG-6003                      TANK-MANV-6002                      TANK-MANV-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**TANK-MANV-5004:** Conduct a Contact Drill (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To orient weapons systems and engage an enemy without changing direction or speed.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify enemy contact.
2. Issue orders.
3. Orient weapon systems towards enemy location.
4. Engage enemy forces.
5. Send report to higher headquarter.
6. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1003	1802-TAC-1004	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-TAC-2004	1812-TAC-2006	1812-TAC-2010
TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4001	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6008	TANK-MANV-6013	TANK-MANV-6014
TANK-MANV-6015		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**TANK-MANV-5005:** Conduct an Action Drill (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To change direction of movement in response to terrain, obstacles or enemy situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify change in terrain, obstacle or enemy situation.
2. Issue orders.
3. All tanks orient and move in prescribed formation and direction.
4. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CMDC-1003	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-TAC-1002
1802-TAC-1004	1812-CMDC-1001	1812-TAC-1001
1812-TAC-2006	TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6015
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**TANK-MANV-5006:** React to Indirect Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy indirect fires on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy indirect fires.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct action drill if moving to avoid impact area.
4. Tank Commander places hatch in open protected position.
5. Loader closes hatch.
6. Gunner closes ballistic doors.
7. Send report to higher headquarters.
8. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002	1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2006
TANK-MANV-4002	TANK-MANV-4003	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-LOG-6003	TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003
---------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-5007:** React to an Air Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy air attacks on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**



1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy aircraft.
2. Issue orders.
3. If not observed by enemy aircraft, tanks seek cover and concealment with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
4. If observed by enemy aircraft, move at a 45 degree angle from path of flight with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
5. Engage aircraft with heavy volume of fires in the path of flight.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.
7. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002	1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2006
TANK-MANV-4002	TANK-MANV-4004	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6008
TANK-MANV-6015		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-5008:** React to a Nuclear Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of an enemy nuclear detonation on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert platoon of nuclear detonation.
2. Close all hatches, ballistic doors and breach.
3. If time permits, position tanks behind protective terrain.
4. Turn off vehicle master power.
5. After effects of detonation have passed, reestablish communications.
6. Send CBRN report to higher headquarters.

7. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
8. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-FPRO-4002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-6002                      TANK-MANV-6002                      TANK-MANV-6003  
TANK-MANV-6006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-5010:** Conduct an Attack by Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To engage the enemy with direct fire and/or indirect fires without closing in order to destroy, neutralize, defeat, or fix.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine location of attack by fire.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Occupy attack by fire location.
5. Control direct fires.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001  
1802-TAC-1004  
1812-TAC-2010  
TANK-MANV-4005

1802-CBTS-2001  
1812-CBTS-2003  
TANK-GNRY-4003

1802-GNRY-1003  
1812-GNRY-2007  
TANK-MANV-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002  
TANK-MANV-6014

TANK-MANV-6006  
TANK-MANV-6015

TANK-MANV-6008

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	400 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	300 round per Platoon
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	9 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-5011:** Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To engage the enemy with direct fire in support of a maneuvering force in order to ensure their freedom of movement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine location of support by fire.
3. Integrate fires in support of maneuver.
4. Occupy support by fire location.
5. Establish direct fire dominance.
6. Control direct fires.
7. Coordinate with supported unit.
8. Continue mission, or recommend a follow on course of action to higher.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003
1802-TAC-1004	1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-TAC-2010	TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6013
----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	400 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 round per Platoon
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**TANK-MANV-5012:** Conduct an Assault (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To destroy enemy forces, or to secure terrain.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Move to attack position.
3. Move to assault position.
4. Orient on the objective.
5. Assault the objective.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
7. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003
1802-TAC-1004	1802-TAC-2001	1812-CBTS-2003
1812-CMDC-2001	1812-TAC-2003	1812-TAC-2006
1812-TAC-2010	TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4001
TANK-MANV-4002	TANK-MANV-4003	TANK-MANV-4004
TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007
TANK-MANV-4008	TANK-MANV-4009	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003
----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	400 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 round per Platoon
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**TANK-MANV-5013:** Conduct a Bypass (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To maintain tempo of an attack by suppressing or breaking contact with intervening enemy forces, and obstacles.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Assign section to observe or suppress enemy forces.
3. Remaining friendly forces seek covered and concealed route.
4. Remaining friendly forces use weapons standoff and obscuration to move around enemy forces.
5. Section observing or suppressing enemy forces breaks contact and rejoins friendly forces.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.
7. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2004
1812-TAC-2006	TANK-MANV-4002	TANK-MANV-4012

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003
----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**TANK-MANV-5014:** Conduct a Reconnaissance by Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1	MCT 1.6.4
-----------	-----------

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To force enemy forces to compromise positions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Employ direct or indirect fires towards likely enemy positions.
3. Identify enemy location.
4. Conduct tactical movement towards enemy forces.
5. Conduct appropriate actions on contact.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003
----------------	----------------	----------------

1802-TAC-1004  
1812-TAC-2010

1812-CBTS-2003  
TANK-GNRY-4003

1812-GNRY-2007  
TANK-MANV-4008

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002

TANK-MANV-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	300 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** TOW Platoon, Scout Platoon can be tasked by HQ to conduct route reconnaissance or area reconnaissance ISO maneuver operations.

---

**TANK-MANV-5015:** Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To prepare for follow-on operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish a hasty defense.
2. Coordinate mutual support with adjacent units.
3. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
4. Cross-level crewmen as required.
5. Cross-level ammunition as required.
6. Send logistics reports to higher headquarters.
7. Conduct essential maintenance.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1812-CMDC-2001                      1812-VOPS-2002                      TANK-LOG-4001  
TANK-MANV-4009

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002                      TANK-MANV-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-5016:** Defend a Battle Position (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To deny enemy forces from specific terrain for a specific amount of time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Occupy hasty battle position.
3. Transition to a deliberate battle position (if situation permits).
4. Conduct continuing actions.
5. Defend against enemy attack.
6. Counterattack against enemy forces.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
8. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003
1802-TAC-1004	1802-TAC-1005	1802-TAC-2001
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2006
1812-TAC-2009	1812-TAC-2010	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4010		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6006



**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	400 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	400 round per Platoon
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-5017:** Conduct a Delay (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To trade enemy space for time while retaining freedom of movement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Establish contact with enemy forces.
3. Maintain contact with enemy forces without becoming decisively engaged.
4. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
6. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003
1802-TAC-1004	1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2006	1812-TAC-2010
TANK-GNRY-4003		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	600 rounds per Platoon
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	400 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 round per Platoon
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per Platoon
G826 Gren, Lnchr Smoke Screening IR M76	64 grenades per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-5018:** Conduct a Withdrawal (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Break contact from enemy forces.
4. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
6. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002 1812-TAC-1001 1812-TAC-2006  
TANK-MANV-4012

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

**TANK-MANV-5019:** Conduct a Screen (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To protect friendly force by providing early warning of enemy operations and time for friendly forces to maneuver against them.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Establish contact with enemy forces.
3. Report enemy operations to higher headquarters.
4. Maintain contact with enemy forces and develop situation as directed.
5. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-CBTS-2001	1802-GNRY-1003
1802-INT-1001	1802-INT-1002	1802-REC-1001
1802-TAC-1004	1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-INT-2001	1812-TAC-2010	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4012		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6008		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	700 rounds per Platoon
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	500 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	300 round per Platoon
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-5020:** Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct liaison with unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-4011

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-5021:** Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Conduct link-up procedures.
3. Moving unit maintains gun tube orientation towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.
6. Moving unit reports completion upon reaching Battle Handover Line.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1812-TAC-1001 1812-TAC-2006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6009 TANK-MANV-6010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-5022:** Conduct In-stride Breach (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To reduce an obstacle and provide a lane for passage of friendly units.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Identify obstacle.
3. Designate point of penetration.
4. Employ the breaching fundamentals.
5. Establish near-side security.
6. Establish far-side security.
7. Assault far-side objective.
8. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1003	1802-CBTS-2002	1802-VOPS-2002
1812-CBTS-2001	1812-CBTS-2002	1812-TAC-2013
1812-VOPS-2006		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6016
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	450 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 round per Platoon
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-5023:** Support an Amphibious Assault

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
------------	-----------

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon.

**STANDARD:** To enable rapid build-up of combat power ashore.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Advise in the development of an amphibious landing plan.
2. Prepare equipment for amphibious operations.
3. Advise in development of surface landing plan.
4. Task-organize into landing serials.
5. Conduct troop leading procedures.
6. Conduct ship-to-shore movement.
7. Continue operations ashore.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
3. JP 5-0 Joint Operation Planning
4. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
6. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
7. MCRP 3-31.1A Employment of Landing Craft Air Cushion (LCAC)
8. MCRP 4-11.3D MCRP 4-11.3D/NWP 22.5 The Naval Beach Group
9. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
10. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
13. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
14. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
15. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
16. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
17. TM 9-2540-206-12&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Deep Water Fording Kit)

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** TANK-VOPS-3002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-EXPD-2002                      1802-TAC-2001                      1812-CMDC-2001  
1812-TAC-2003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6012

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Fording kits and Landing crafts (LCU/LCAC) required.

---

**TANK-MANV-5025:** Conduct a Tactical Movement (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To develop the situation and to establish or regain enemy contact.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine formation, movement technique, speed and dispersion.
3. Issue orders.
4. Apply appropriate formation.
5. Apply appropriate movement technique.
6. Change formation and movement technique as per METT-T.
7. Implement direct fire plan.
8. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
9. Conduct battle drills as required.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002	1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2006
TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4001	TANK-MANV-4002
TANK-MANV-4012		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**TANK-MANV-5028:** Serve as a Breach Force (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.



**STANDARD:** To establish a lane through an obstacle in order to provide higher headquarters freedom of movement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Participate in fire support planning.
3. Task-organize.
4. Identify obstacle and points of penetration.
5. Establish near-side security.
6. Reduce enemy obstacle.
7. Proof lanes through enemy obstacle.
8. Establish far-side security.
9. Send reports.
10. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1003	1802-CBTS-2002	1802-VOPS-2002
1812-CBTS-2001	1812-TAC-2013	1812-VOPS-2006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6016
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

SECTION & CREW COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	6000	6-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	6001	6-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. . . . .	6002	6-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY. . . . .	6003	6-2
RESTRICTIVE/SEVERELY RESTRICTED TERRAIN TRAINING. . . . .	6004	6-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	6005	6-3
SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . .	6006	6-4
CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	6007	6-22

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

SECTION & CREW COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**6000. PURPOSE.** This chapter contains all section and crew level tank unit events (4000 and 3000-Levels). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to sections and crews and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

**6001. EVENT CODING**

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TANK" indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the section and crew level are:

CSS - Combat Service Support	LOG - Logistics
FPRO - Force Protection	MANV - Maneuver
GNRY - Gunnery	VOPS - Vehicle Operations

c. Field three - This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events.

**6002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.** Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

**6003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY**

1. A Tank Section serves as the minimum, task-organized, armored maneuver element. It is capable of operating as a tank-pure element or in a task-organized platoon. It is uniquely organized and equipped to conduct maneuver warfare and integrate fires to shatter the enemy's cohesion through a variety of rapid, focused, and unexpected actions, which create a turbulent and rapidly deteriorating situation with which the enemy cannot cope.

2. Provides the supported commander an expeditionary, all-weather, day, night, CBRN capable, and armor protected maneuver element.
3. Employs long range VHF capable of controlling section maneuver and fires simultaneously.
4. Ideally suited to rapidly identify and provide precision target location through its advanced optics and far-target locator.
5. Uniquely suited to conduct movement to contacts and attacks, and support a higher headquarters exploitation and pursuit by conducting offensive forms of maneuver.
6. Capable of conducting security operations independently or as part of a larger force.
7. Capable of conducting forcible entry.
8. Optimally suited to conduct maneuver in support of defensive operations to defeat enemy forces or retain and control terrain through maneuver and long-range, precision direct fire.
9. Uniquely suited to support all offensive and defensive operations in a CBRN environment.
10. Capable of preparing for, participating in, and supporting amphibious planning and operations.

**6004. RESTRICTIVE/SEVERELY RESTRICTED TERRAIN TRAINING.** To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train in restrictive/severely restricted terrain as a task-organized unit. Units should strive to conduct all events in this chapter integrating non-organic assets in multiple operating environments.

**6005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS			
Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
TANK-CSS-4001		Conduct Recovery Operations	6-4
TANK-FPRO-4001		Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment (S/L)	6-5
TANK-FPRO-4002		React to a Nuclear Attack	6-6
TANK-GNRY-4001		Conduct Tank Table VII (S/L)	6-7
TANK-GNRY-4002		Conduct Tank Table VIII (S/L)	6-8
<b>TANK-GNRY-4003</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Tank Table IX (L)</b>	6-9
TANK-LOG-4001		Conduct Resupply Operations	6-11
TANK-MANV-4001		Conduct a Contact Drill (S/L)	6-11
TANK-MANV-4002		Conduct an Action Drill (S/L)	6-12
TANK-MANV-4003		React to Indirect Fire (S/L)	6-13
TANK-MANV-4004		React to an Air Attack (S/L)	6-14
TANK-MANV-4005		Conduct an Attack by Fire (S/L)	6-15

TANK-MANV-4006		Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)	6-16
TANK-MANV-4007		Conduct an Assault (S/L)	6-17
TANK-MANV-4008		Conduct a Reconnaissance by Fire (S/L)	6-18
TANK-MANV-4009		Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization (S/L)	6-19
TANK-MANV-4010		Defend a Battle Position (S/L)	6-19
TANK-MANV-4011		Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)	6-20
TANK-MANV-4012		Conduct a Tactical Movement (S/L)	6-21
<b>CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS</b>			
TANK-GNRY-3001		Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)	6-22
TANK-GNRY-3002		Zero Tank Main Gun	6-23
TANK-GNRY-3003		Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun	6-24
TANK-GNRY-3004		Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun	6-25
TANK-GNRY-3005		Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)	6-26
TANK-GNRY-3006		Conduct Tank Table II (P)	6-27
TANK-GNRY-3007		Conduct Tank Table III (S/L)	6-28
TANK-GNRY-3008		Conduct Tank Table IV (L)	6-30
TANK-GNRY-3009		Conduct Tank Table V (L)	6-32
<b>TANK-GNRY-3010</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Tank Table VI (L)</b>	6-33
TANK-VOPS-3001		Construct a Tank Survivability Position	6-35
TANK-VOPS-3002		Install a Fording Kit	6-36
TANK-VOPS-3003		Camouflage a Tank	6-36
TANK-VOPS-3004		Conduct Abandon Tank Procedures	6-37

#### 6006. SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**TANK-CSS-4001:** Conduct Recovery Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a section with a disabled tank.

**STANDARD:** To return the tank to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Report condition, location and circumstances of damage to higher headquarters.
2. Conduct assessment.
3. Plan recovery techniques: self-recovery, like-vehicle recovery, dedicated-recovery and expedients.
4. Recover or repair equipment.
5. In accordance with higher authority destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items, and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable by friendly forces and accessible to enemy forces.
6. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
2. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**EXTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** 21XX-VOPS-1002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-VOPS-1003                      1802-VOPS-1005                      1812-VOPS-1002  
1812-VOPS-2002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-CSS-5001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-FPRO-4001:** Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized section.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
2. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
3. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
4. Support reconnaissance, survey, and decontamination operations.
5. Conduct operations in contaminated environments.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for NBC Defense Operations
6. MCWP 3-37.3 MTTP for CBRN Decontamination
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002

1812-TAC-1001

1812-VOPS-2003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-5003

TANK-FPRO-5004

TANK-FPRO-5005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TANK-FPRO-4002:** React to a Nuclear Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of an enemy nuclear detonation on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert section of nuclear detonation.
2. Close all hatches, ballistic doors and breech.
3. If time permits, position tanks behind protective terrain.
4. Turn off vehicle master power.
5. After effects of detonation have passed, reestablish communications.
6. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
7. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
8. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002

1812-TAC-1001

1812-TAC-2005

1812-VOPS-2003

TANK-VOPS-3001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5005

TANK-MANV-5008

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-GNRY-4001:** Conduct Tank Table VII (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1

MCT 1.12.2

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the sections ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3010

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010	1802-TAC-1002
1802-VOPS-1002	1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-1003
1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-1006
1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001	1812-GNRY-2002
1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2004
1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008	1812-VOPS-1001
1812-VOPS-1005		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5004

TANK-MANV-5010

TANK-MANV-5011



TANK-MANV-5016

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	5	Y

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A111 Ctg, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 rounds per Section
A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked	100 round per Section

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the gunnery and tactical portions of the evaluation.

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-

Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams  
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010 TANK-GNRY-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1009	1802-TAC-1001	1802-VOPS-1002
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2004
1812-GNRY-2006	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-1001
1812-TAC-2004	1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008
1812-VOPS-1001	1812-VOPS-1005	TANK-GNRY-3001
TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5010	TANK-MANV-5011
TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5014	TANK-MANV-5016

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	200 round per Section
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 round per Section
AA38 Ctg, .50 Cal SLAP-T	16 round per Section

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).  
Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

---

**TANK-GNRY-4003:** Conduct Tank Table IX (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table IX is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the gunnery and tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002
----------------	----------------	----------------

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1010	1802-TAC-1001	1802-VOPS-1002
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-CMDC-2001	1812-GNRY-1003
1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-1009
1812-GNRY-2006	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-1001
1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008	1812-TRNG-2001
1812-TRNG-2002	1812-TRNG-2003	1812-TRNG-2004
1812-VOPS-1001	1812-VOPS-1005	TANK-GNRY-3001
TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5010	TANK-MANV-5011
TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5014	TANK-MANV-5016

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	700 round per Section

A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	400 round per Section
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	14 round per Section
CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028	1 round per Section

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).  
Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks

---

**TANK-LOG-4001:** Conduct Resupply Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To replenish all classes of supply in order to maintain combat power.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Submit logistics reports to higher.
2. Coordinate to conduct resupply.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Conduct resupply via tailgate or service stations methods.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-EXPD-2003 1812-CMDC-2001 1812-EXPD-2002  
1812-LOG-2002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-LOG-5001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-4001:** Conduct a Contact Drill (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To orient weapons systems and engage an enemy without changing direction or speed.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify enemy contact.
2. Issue orders.
3. Orient weapon systems towards enemy location.
4. Engage enemy forces.
5. Send report to higher headquarter.
6. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-TAC-1004
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-1001
1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008	TANK-GNRY-3001
TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3004
TANK-GNRY-3010		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-5002	TANK-MANV-5004
TANK-MANV-5010	TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5025

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**TANK-MANV-4002:** Conduct an Action Drill (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                    MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To change direction of movement in response to terrain, obstacles or enemy situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify change in terrain, obstacle or enemy situation.
2. Issue orders.
3. All tanks orient and move in prescribed formation and direction.
4. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002                      1812-TAC-1001                      1812-TAC-2005

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5002                      TANK-MANV-5005                      TANK-MANV-5012  
TANK-MANV-5013                      TANK-MANV-5017                      TANK-MANV-5025

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-4003:** React to Indirect Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy indirect fires on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert section of enemy indirect fires.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct action drill if moving to avoid impact area.
4. Tank Commander places hatch in open protected position.
5. Loader closes hatch.
6. Gunner closes ballistic doors.
7. Send report to higher headquarters.
8. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-TAC-1001
1812-TAC-2005	1812-VOPS-1005	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5002	TANK-MANV-5005	TANK-MANV-5006
TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5025	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-4004:** React to an Air Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy air attacks on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert section of enemy aircraft.
2. Issue orders.
3. If not observed by enemy aircraft, seek cover and concealment with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
4. If observed by enemy aircraft, move at a 45 degree angle from path of flight with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
5. Engage aircraft with heavy volume of fires in the path of flight.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.
7. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002                      1812-TAC-1001                      1812-TAC-2005

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5002                      TANK-MANV-5005                      TANK-MANV-5007  
TANK-MANV-5025

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**TANK-MANV-4005:** Conduct an Attack by Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To engage the enemy with direct fire and/or indirect fires without closing in order to destroy, neutralize, defeat, or fix.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine location of attack by fire.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Occupy attack by fire location.
5. Control direct fires.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1001	1802-TAC-1004	1812-CBTS-2003
1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008
TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003
TANK-GNRY-3004	TANK-GNRY-3010	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-5001	TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5010
----------------	----------------	----------------



**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-4006:** Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To engage the enemy with direct fire in support of a maneuvering force in order to ensure their freedom of movement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine location of support by fire.
3. Integrate fires in support of maneuver.
4. Occupy support by fire location.
5. Establish direct fire dominance.
6. Control direct fires.
7. Coordinate with supported unit.
8. Continue mission, or recommend a follow on course of action to higher.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-TAC-1001
1802-TAC-1004	1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008	TANK-GNRY-3001
TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5011	TANK-MANV-5012
----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**TANK-MANV-4007:** Conduct an Assault (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To destroy enemy forces, or to secure terrain.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Move to attack position.
3. Move to assault position.
4. Orient on the objective.
5. Assault the objective.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
7. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-INT-1001
1802-INT-1002	1802-TAC-1001	1802-TAC-1004
1802-VOPS-1004	1802-VOPS-1006	1812-CBTS-2003
1812-GNRY-2003	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-INT-2001
1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008	1812-VOPS-2003
TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003
TANK-GNRY-3004	TANK-VOPS-3004	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5012

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-4008:** Conduct a Reconnaissance by Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To force enemy forces to compromise positions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Employ direct or indirect fires towards likely enemy positions.
3. Identify enemy location.
4. Conduct tactical movement towards enemy forces.
5. Conduct appropriate actions on contact.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-INT-1001
1802-TAC-1001	1802-TAC-1004	1812-CBTS-2003
1812-GNRY-2007	1812-INT-2001	1812-TAC-1001
1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008	TANK-GNRY-3001
TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5014

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-4009:** Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To prepare for follow-on operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish a hasty battle position.
2. Coordinate mutual support with adjacent units.
3. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
4. Cross-level crewmen as required.
5. Cross-level ammunition as required.
6. Send logistics reports to higher headquarters.
7. Conduct essential maintenance.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1011	1802-VOPS-1001	1802-VOPS-1003
1802-VOPS-1005	1802-VOPS-1006	1802-VOPS-1007
1802-VOPS-2001	1812-GNRY-1008	1812-LOG-2002
1812-TAC-2012	1812-VOPS-1001	1812-VOPS-1002
1812-VOPS-1004	1812-VOPS-1006	1812-VOPS-1007
1812-VOPS-1008	1812-VOPS-2001	1812-VOPS-2002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-LOG-5001 TANK-MANV-5015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-4010:** Defend a Battle Position (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To deny enemy forces from specific terrain for a specific amount of time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Occupy Hasty Battle Position.
3. Transition to a deliberate battle position (if situation permits).
4. Conduct continuing actions.
5. Defend against enemy attack.
6. Counterattack against enemy forces.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
8. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-TAC-1004
1802-TAC-1005	1812-CBTS-2003	1812-CMDC-2004
1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2008	1812-TAC-2009
1812-TAC-2011	1812-TAC-2012	TANK-GNRY-3001
TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3004
TANK-VOPS-3001	TANK-VOPS-3003	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5016

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-MANV-4011:** Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct liaison with unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002                      1812-TAC-1001                      1812-TAC-2005

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5020

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-4012:** Conduct a Tactical Movement (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To develop the situation and to establish or regain enemy contact.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine movement technique, speed and dispersion.
3. Issue orders.
4. Apply appropriate movement technique.
5. Change movement technique as per METT-T.
6. Implement direct fire plan.
7. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
8. Conduct battle drills as required.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CMDC-1003	1802-TAC-1002	1812-CMDC-1001
1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2004	1812-TAC-2005

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5002	TANK-MANV-5010	TANK-MANV-5014
TANK-MANV-5025		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

**6007. CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

**TANK-GNRY-3001:** Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the fire control system is operational.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Identify discrepancies.
4. Record data.
5. Correct discrepancies.
6. Record corrected data.
7. Complete AACs.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-

- Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams  
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1009                      1812-GNRY-2004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006
TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-MANV-4008	TANK-MANV-4010

---

**TANK-GNRY-3002:** Zero Tank Main Gun

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So that the center of impact of the last round fired is within .15  
mils of the aiming point.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Fire for confirmation with KE.
4. Record data.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for CE.
6. Conduct precision alignment of the GAS.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1005                      1812-GNRY-1006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007
TANK-MANV-4010		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA38 Ctg, .50 Cal SLAP-T	4 rounds per crew



C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865 4 round per crew  
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002 4 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-GNRY-3003:** Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1 MCT 1.12.2 MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.
3. Boresight both the day and thermal sights.
4. Zero day sight.
5. Zero thermal sight.
6. Record readings for both the day and thermal sights.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1007 1812-GNRY-2002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001 TANK-GNRY-4002 TANK-GNRY-4003  
TANK-MANV-4007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-GNRY-3004:** Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

SUPPORTED MET ( S ) :

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

EVALUATION-CODED: NO                      SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. In accordance with the technical manual, prepare the gunner station for operation.
2. Conduct PMCS on weapon prior to install.
3. Install weapon for firing.
4. Boresight weapon systems.
5. In accordance with the reference, fire a burst of 20 to 30 rounds.
6. Move the "RETICLE ADJUST" toggle switch to center the reticle aiming point to within 3 mils of the strike area.
7. Fire a second 20-30 round burst.
8. Confirm and validate impact.
9. Repeat the adjustment of the "RETICLE ADJUST" toggle switch to center the reticle aiming point as needed.
10. Fire a final 20-30 round confirmation burst.
11. Confirm, validate and record data.

**REFERENCES :**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

---

---

1802-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-2001
----------------	----------------

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4007		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

### SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	N

NOTES: This system will only train the Gunner and Tank Commander. It does not incorporate the Driver and Loader.

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	100 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-GNRY-3005:** Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To demonstrate technical proficiencies as an individual and a tank crew.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct Ammunition Identification.
2. Conduct Vehicle Identification.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M240 7.62mm Machine Gun.
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M48 .50 Cal Machine Gun.
5. Perform MRS Update.
6. Reload 120mm Main Gun.
7. Conduct Crew Fire Evacuation Drill.
8. Evacuate an Injured Crewman.
9. Boresight M1A1 Tank Main Gun.
10. Conduct firing circuit check on the M256 breechblock.
11. Perform Failure to Fire (Misfire) Procedures on Abrams Main Gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1010	1802-GNRY-1011
1802-VOPS-1002	1802-VOPS-1006	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1008	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-VOPS-1005
1812-VOPS-2003		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

## SIMULATION EVALUATION:

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS :**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).

**TANK-GNRY-3006:** Conduct Tank Table II (P)

SUPPORTED MET(S) :

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table II is designed to train and evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle in a simulated environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a gunnery training simulator.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target from a tank.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary and moving targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a

- stationary target with a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets with the tank mounted machine guns.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System
3. TM 08953A-10/2 Advanced Gunnery Training System

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001
1812-GNRY-2002	1812-VOPS-1005	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	P	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	12	Y

NOTES: Event is conducted in simulator to standard prior to crew live fire qualification semi-annual gunnery.

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).  
Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is determined by the MSC.

**TANK-GNRY-3007:** Conduct Tank Table III (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table III is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring 70 points per target on each engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing SCWS.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the tank mounted machine guns.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005                      TANK-GNRY-3006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001
1812-GNRY-2002	1812-GNRY-2004	1812-GNRY-2006
1812-GNRY-2007	1812-VOPS-1005	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4007		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	550 rounds per crew
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 rounds per crew
AA38 Ctg, .50 Cal SLAP-T	16 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	8 rounds per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	7 rounds per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** 1. Advanced Inbore Marksmanship Training Enhancement System for Tanks (AIMTEST).

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This table must be qualified dry fire prior to any live fire. Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

**TANK-GNRY-3008:** Conduct Tank Table IV (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table IV is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

- Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing SCWS.
- Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
- Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
- Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun.
- Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage

- stationary target utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
  7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
  8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing a simulated degraded fire control system.
  9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or a simulated degraded fire control system.
  10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the tank mounted machine guns.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
----------------	----------------	----------------

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001
1812-GNRY-2002	1812-GNRY-2004	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-VOPS-1005		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	450 rounds per crew
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	6 rounds per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	3 rounds per crew
CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028	1 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**



**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

**TANK-GNRY-3009:** Conduct Tank Table V (L)

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table V is designed to train the crew to engage moving and stationary targets utilizing all vehicle weapon systems.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and a moving target utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and a moving target utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets with the Stabilized Commanders Weapon Station, coaxial machine gun, and loaders machine gun.

Enclosure (1)

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001
1812-GNRY-2002	1812-GNRY-2004	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-VOPS-1005		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	550 rounds per crew
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	50 round per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	8 round per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	5 rounds per crew
CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028	1 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).  
Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

---

**TANK-GNRY-3010:** Conduct Tank Table VI (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S) :

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table VI is designed to evaluate the crew on engaging moving and stationary targets using all vehicle weapon systems while in the offensive or defensive postures.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 total points and qualify 7 of 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary and moving targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or from a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the commanders weapon station, coaxial machine gun, or loaders machine gun.

**REFERENCES :**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008	TANK-GNRY-3009	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001 1802-GNRY-1003 1802-GNRY-1004

1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1802-VOPS-1004
1812-GNRY-1001	1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009
1812-GNRY-2001	1812-GNRY-2002	1812-GNRY-2004
1812-GNRY-2006	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-VOPS-1005

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4007		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	450 rounds per crew
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	8 rounds per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	9 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).

**TANK-VOPS-3001:** Construct a Tank Survivability Position

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank with Multi-purpose Tank Blade.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy fires.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Install Multi-purpose Tank Blade.
2. Construct a tank hull-down fighting position.
3. Occupy fighting position.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002                      1812-TAC-2011

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**    TANK-MANV-4010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-VOPS-3002:**    Install a Fording Kit

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**    MCT 1.12.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    12 months

**CONDITION:**    Given a tank and a complete fording kit.

**STANDARD:**    To allow a tank to conduct amphibious operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Inventory fording kit.
2. Install components.
3. Inspect installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2540-206-12&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Deep Water Fording Kit)

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-EXPD-2002                      1812-VOPS-2001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-4007                      TANK-MANV-5023

---

**TANK-VOPS-3003:**    Camouflage a Tank

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and camouflage system.

**STANDARD:** To avoid enemy observation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Inventory equipment.
2. Prepare camouflage system.
3. Employ camouflage system.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-17.6 Survivability Operations
4. TM 5-1080-250-12&P Ultralight Weight Camo Net System

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-TAC-1002                    1812-TAC-2011

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-4004                    TANK-MANV-4010

---

**TANK-VOPS-3004:** Conduct Abandon Tank Procedures

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.12.2                    MCT 1.6.1                    MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank rendered combat ineffective.

**STANDARD:** To deny compromise of equipment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Initiate abandon tank procedures.
2. Execute abandon tank procedures.
3. Move crew to a safe location.

**REFERENCE:** MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-VOPS-1002                    1802-VOPS-1006                    1812-VOPS-1005  
1812-VOPS-2003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-4003                    TANK-MANV-4004                    TANK-MANV-4007  
TANK-MANV-4009                    TANK-MANV-4010

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

MOS 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	7000	7-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	7001	7-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. . . . .	7002	7-2
PREREQUISITES . . . . .	7003	7-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES. . . . .	7004	7-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL . . . . .	7005	7-7
2000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	7006	7-8
1000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	7007	7-17

## TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

### CHAPTER 7

#### MOS 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

**7000. PURPOSE.** The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Tank Officer. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident/distance learning PME.

#### **7001. EVENT CODING**

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1802" indicating that the event is for Tank Officers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for Tank Officers are:

CBTS - Combat Support	INT - Intelligence
CMDC - Command and Control	REC - Reconnaissance
COND - Conditioning	TAC - Tactical Operation
EXPD - Expeditionary	VOPS - Vehicle Operations
GNRY - Gunnery	

c. Field three - This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events.

**7002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.** Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

**7003. PREREQUISITES.** The Marine Tank Officer will have completed The Basic School (TBS) and Armor Basic Officer Leader Course (ABOLC).

#### **7004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES**



**1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY.** The Tank Officer will complete the Armor Basic Officer Leaders Course (ABOLC) at Fort Benning, GA. Upon graduation, the Tank Officer will conduct additional Level 2000 training in a tank unit in a variety of billets. 2000-level training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident and seminar courses.

**2. BILLET: Tank Platoon Commander.** The Tank Platoon Commander carries out the orders of the Tank Company Commander. He is proficient with all T/O weapons within his platoon. He is responsible for training his unit to perform METs assigned by his Company Commander's METLs. He is responsible for deployment and tactical employment of his unit. He is responsible for the discipline, morale, and welfare of his unit. A Lieutenant holds the Tank Platoon Commander billet.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Trains the platoon in the performance of tasks that support company training objectives.

(2) Maintains the welfare and discipline of a platoon.

(3) Makes operational planning recommendations to the Tank Company Commander.

(4) Directs the troop leading procedures in preparation for all tactical operations.

(5) Advises the supported commander on the employment of armor, as well as the logistical and maintenance requirements for tank unit.

(6) Proficient in battle tracking and submitting reports.

(7) Supervises the evacuation of casualties.

(8) Capable of conducting platoon operations in a CBRN environment.

(9) Proficient in use and employment of all weapons organic to a tank platoon.

(10) Engages targets utilizing all organic weapon systems on the M1A1 Tank.

(11) Supervises preventive maintenance checks and services of all platoon tanks and equipment.

(12) Communicates using proper communications procedures with organic wired and wireless communications.

(13) Integrates supporting fires in accomplishment of an assigned mission.

(14) Supervises the preparation of a tank platoon through Pre-Combat Checks (PCCs) and Pre-Combat Inspections (PCIs).

(15) Leads the platoon in tactical operations as part of a larger force.

(16) Supervises the operator maintenance for, and is proficient in employment of the mine clearing blade, track width, mine plow, and deep water fording kit.

**3. BILLET: Tank Company Executive Officer.** Second most senior 1802 in the tank company. Assumes command in commander's absence.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Makes operational planning recommendations to company commander on unit training and operations.

(2) Oversees unit training and operations.

(3) Oversees range operations.

(4) Oversees unit logistical support and requirements.

(5) Trains tank platoon commanders in performance of duties.

(6) Oversees the conduct and supervises ancillary training events.

(7) Performs duties as the company FiST leader.

(8) Oversees the company's maintenance efforts, and executes the duties as the Company Maintenance Officer.

(9) Supervises the company's embarkation training.

**4. BILLET: Tank Company Commander.** The Tank Company Commander is responsible to the Commanding Officer of the tank battalion, supported infantry regiment, or battalion in tank employment and becomes an armored advisor to the supported infantry commander. The Tank Company Commander commands three platoons and a headquarters section. He is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and all associated equipment.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Responsible for the tactical employment of assigned personnel and equipment.

(2) Directs the logistics support task-organized to the tank company in support of his tanks and equipment.

(3) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his company.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of armor.

(5) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical and maintenance requirements for tank unit.

(6) Employs operational safety procedures.

(7) Trains and supervises assigned personnel in the performance of tasks which support battalion training objectives.

(8) Responsible for overall preventative and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

(9) Responsible for mentoring the platoon commanders and executive officer in his company.

**5. BILLET: Assistant Operations Officer.** Rank of Captain, responsible to the Operations Officer for the completion of all external tasks and coordinating all battalion training and operations.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Assist Operations Officer with planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical employment of units.

(2) Maintain the accountability, welfare, and discipline of the operations section and assigned equipment.

(3) Serve as battalion Unit Training Management Officer.

(4) Serve as the Operation Planning Team Leader.

(5) Assist in the preparation of battalion reports and briefs.

(6) Make operational and training planning recommendations to the Company Commanders, Battalion Operations Officer and Battalion Commander.

(7) Conduct Risk Management (RM).

(8) Capable of clearing fires.

(9) Capable of integrating attachments in support of battalion.

(10) Train and integrate all agencies within the Alpha and Bravo commands.

(11) Prepared to assume the role of the Battalion Operations Officer.

**6. BILLET: H&S Company Commander.** Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for the training and readiness of all personnel within H&S Company.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Prepare, train, and lead the company in an austere, chaotic, uncertain, mentally and physical demanding environment for sustained operations.

(2) Maintain the accountability, welfare, and discipline of the company and assigned equipment.

(3) Serve as Field Trains Officer-In-Charge in support of battalion operations.

(4) Responsible for movement and security of the battalion field trains.

(5) Make operational and training planning recommendations to the Battalion Operations Officer and Battalion Commander.

(6) Conduct Risk Management (RM).

(7) Mentor and develop subordinate leaders to operate independently or in support of a unit.

(8) Capable of integrating attachments in support of company, battalion, and Special Purpose MAGTF operations.

(9) Responsible for mentoring the platoon commanders and executive officer in his company.

(10) Prepared to assume the role of Operations Officer and Battalion Executive Officer.

**7. BILLET: Battalion Logistics Officer.** Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion logistical requirements and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Assumes staff responsibility for determining logistical requirements, support, and operations for a tank battalion.

(2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising logistical support of tank units.

(3) Makes logistical planning recommendations to the battalion commander.

**8. BILLET: Battalion Operations Officer.** Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion training and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training and tactical operations of a tank battalion.

(2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support of units.

(3) Responsible for determining priorities for allocation of personnel, weapons, equipment and ammunition.

(4) Makes operational planning recommendations to the battalion commander.

(5) Certified as an Operations and Tactics Instructor (OTI) prior to assuming the billet. See MCO 3502.7 and Command and Control T&R Manual (2000-Level Individual Tasks) for specific functions/responsibilities.

**7. BILLET: Battalion Executive Officer.** Second-most senior 1802 officer in the battalion. Assumes command in battalion commander's absence. Responsible for managing and coordinating the battalion staff and administrative tasks.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Coordinates all actions of the battalion staff.
- (2) Supervises staff planning process.
- (3) Ensures battalion reports are made as required to higher and adjacent commanders.
- (4) Maintains information flow to battalion commander.
- (5) Supervises the battalion's maintenance program.

**8. BILLET: Battalion Commanding Officer.** The Tank Battalion Commander leads a tank battalion as an independent maneuver element and is responsible to the Commanding General of the Marine Division.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Advises supported unit commander on employment of tank unit.
- (2) Responsible for the vehicle preventive and corrective maintenance.
- (3) Responsible for the training of personnel in the performance of tasks which support division training objectives.
- (4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for the tank unit.
- (5) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the battalion.
- (6) Directs organic combat training and logistical operations in support of subordinate units.
- (7) Leads tank battalion as an independent maneuver element.

**7005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL**

Event Code	Event	Page
<b>2000 Level Events</b>		
1802-CBTS-2001	Employ a Fire Support Team (FiST) (S/L)	7-8
1802-CBTS-2002	Direct Engineering Operations	7-9
1802-CMDC-2001	Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop	7-10
1802-COND-2001	March with a Fighting Load	7-11
1802-EXPD-2002	Conduct Amphibious Operations	7-11
1802-EXPD-2003	Plan Transportation Support for a Unit Operation	7-13
1802-GNRY-2001	Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System (S/L)	7-13
1802-GNRY-2002	Supervise Boresighting of a Tank (S/L)	7-14

1802-TAC-2001	Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment	7-15
1802-VOPS-2001	Conduct Maintenance Management	7-16
1802-VOPS-2002	Supervise the Operation of the Mine Clearing Blade and Tracked Width Mine Plow	7-17
<b>1000 Level Events</b>		
1802-CBTS-1001	Employ Fire Support (S/L)	7-17
1802-CBTS-1003	Plan a Breach	7-18
1802-CMDC-1003	Communicate Using Visual Signals	7-19
1802-CMDC-1004	Conduct Unit Training	7-19
1802-CMDC-1005	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures	7-20
1802-GNRY-1001	Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)	7-20
1802-GNRY-1003	Direct the Engagement Process (S/L)	7-21
1802-GNRY-1004	Perform Individual Actions to Unload Stuck Main Gun Round	7-22
1802-GNRY-1005	Perform Individual Actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun	7-23
1802-GNRY-1006	Perform Individual Actions to Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun	7-24
1802-GNRY-1007	Perform Individual Actions to Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun	7-25
1802-GNRY-1008	Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station	7-25
1802-GNRY-1009	Perform Individual Actions to Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)	7-26
1802-GNRY-1010	Load the Main Gun	7-27
1802-GNRY-1011	Evacuate an Injured Crewman	7-28
1802-INT-1001	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace (IPB)	7-29
1802-INT-1002	Execute Intelligence Collection Effort	7-29
1802-REC-1001	Conduct Reconnaissance Operations	7-30
1802-TAC-1001	Conduct Offensive Operations (S/L)	7-30
1802-TAC-1002	Direct a Tank Unit (S/L)	7-31
1802-TAC-1003	Direct Security Operations	7-32
1802-TAC-1004	Control Direct Fires (S/L)	7-33
1802-TAC-1005	Develop an Engagement Area (S/L)	7-34
1802-TAC-1006	Establish a Battle Position	7-35
1802-VOPS-1001	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	7-36
1802-VOPS-1002	Prepare, Operate, and Secure Tank Commander's Station	7-36
1802-VOPS-1003	Perform Individual Actions to Recover Tank	7-37
1802-VOPS-1004	Perform Individual Actions for Emergency Procedures on a Tank	7-38
1802-VOPS-1005	Supervise Tank Recovery Operations	7-39
1802-VOPS-1006	Conduct Abandon Tank Drill	7-39
1802-VOPS-1007	Load Batteries Onto a Tank	7-40
1802-VOPS-1008	Hook Up Disabled Vehicle for Tow	7-40

**7006. 2000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**1802-CBTS-2001:** Employ a Fire Support Team (FiST) (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Company Commander, Company Executive Officer

**GRADES:** 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a FiST with appropriate equipment and an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To provide timely and accurate fires in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine fire support requirement.
2. Develop fire support plan.
3. Execute fire support plan.
4. Assess effects of fires.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
6. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
7. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** 1802-CBTS-1001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-6001	TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003
TANK-MANV-6006	TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6016

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	SAVT	Team Hours	5	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-CBTS-2002:** Direct Engineering Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and engineering assets.

**STANDARD:** To integrate armor and supporting capabilities during mobility/countermobility and survivability operations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Coordinate employment in support of mobility operations.
2. Coordinate employment of tanks support of counter mobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support for survivability operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-17.5 Combined Arms Counter mobility Operations
4. MCWP 3-17.6 Survivability Operations
5. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** 1802-CBTS-1003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5022

TANK-MANV-5028

TANK-MANV-6011

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1802-CMDC-2001:** Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given two or more stationary tanks and communication, wire WD-1/TT.

**STANDARD:** So that communications between tanks can be made without emitting radio signals.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure vehicle master power switch is set to 'ON'.
2. Turn on Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.
3. Connect one wire end to each Telephone/Remote post on the Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.
4. Run connected wire to next tank to be connected in the same manner.
5. Conduct a communications check external to the tank to verify that the last loop is operational.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08636A-14/1 USMC Technical Manual, Intercom Set AN/VIC-2(V)
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-



- Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
  7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
  8. TM 11-5280-890-10-1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-19

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-4010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1802-COND-2001:** March with a Fighting Load

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an individual weapon, a fighting load, and as part of a unit movement.

**STANDARD:** To complete a 15-kilometer march within four hours.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assemble the load for the march.
2. Don the load for the march.
3. Complete a 15 kilometer march.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1802. Prior to executing this event, Marines will conduct a 5K and 10K march with the fighting load. Individual field equipment weight is not to exceed 55 pounds.

---

**1802-EXPD-2002:** Conduct Amphibious Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To land all personnel and equipment ashore prepared for follow-on operations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Participate in supported unit's amphibious planning.
2. Prepare equipment for amphibious operations.
3. Task-organize into landing serials.
4. Conduct applicable troop leading procedures.
5. Embark landing craft.
6. Conduct ship-to-shore movement.
7. Debark landing craft.
8. Execute operations ashore.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
10. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3\_ Wet Well Operations Manual
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
3. JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
7. MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
8. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
9. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
10. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
13. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
14. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
15. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
16. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
17. TM 08953A-14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit
18. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operators Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
19. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5023

TANK-MANV-6012

TANK-MANV-7013

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** L-Class shipping and surface connectors (LCAC and/or LCU).

**1802-EXPD-2003:** Plan Transportation Support for a Unit Operation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a deployment order.

**STANDARD:** To ensure transportation support, when integrated with the other functional areas of logistics, satisfies the unit's movement in support of the assigned mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Participate in unit embarkation planning.
2. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution (FDP&E).
3. Identify transportation requirements.
4. Coordinate movement planning.
5. Support deployment and distribution planning through the use of Automated Information Systems (AIS).
6. Coordinate with Distribution Management Office (DMO).
7. Coordinate with movement control agencies.
8. Identify organic/non-organic support capabilities.
9. Prepare equipment and cargo for embarkation.
10. Prepare hazmat and cargo for transportation.
11. Supervise Landing Force Support Party (LFSP) operations.
12. Supervise material handling.
13. Supervise rail head operations.
14. Supervise motor transport operations.
15. Supervise the execution of the unit embarkation plan.

**REFERENCES:**

1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-02.2 Embarkation
3. MCO 4500.9 Defense Transportation Regulations
4. MCO 4630.6 Military Airlift Command Requirement
5. MCO P4450.12 Storage and Handling of Hazardous Materials
6. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
7. MCTP 3-40F Transportation Operations
8. MCTP 3-40H MAGTF Supply Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-7004                    TANK-LOG-6003

---

**1802-GNRY-2001:** Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** In order to provide obscuration for the vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect grenade discharger.
2. Power up commander's station.
3. Conduct firing circuit check.
4. Power down commander's station.
5. Load smoke grenades.
6. Power up commander's station.
7. Operate M250/M257 grenade launcher system.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-4007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
G826 Gren, Lnchr Smoke Screening IR M76	16 grenades per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-GNRY-2002:** Supervise Boresighting of a Tank (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, associated equipment, and references.

**STANDARD:** To calibrate the fire control system.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Coordinate crew PMCS.
2. Inspect collimation of Muzzle Boresight Device (MBD).
3. Direct conduct of boresight procedures.
4. Verify recorded data.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

---

**1802-TAC-2001:** Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit, a supported unit, and associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** To properly employ armor in support of higher headquarters.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Advise on the capabilities and limitations of armor.
2. Advise on armor employment in the operating environment.
3. Advise on armor employment across the range of military operations.
4. Advise on Tank-Infantry integration.
5. Advise on the employment of armor in mobility/counter-mobility operations.
6. Advise on the conduct of gap crossing operations.
7. Advise on logistical requirements for operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 7-28 Jungle Operations
5. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-35.1 Mountain Warfare Operations

8. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
9. MCWP 3-35.6 Desert Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1003                      1802-TAC-1001                      1802-TAC-1002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5012                      TANK-MANV-5016                      TANK-MANV-5019  
TANK-MANV-5022                      TANK-MANV-5023                      TANK-MANV-5028

---

**1802-VOPS-2001:** Conduct Maintenance Management

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** To ensure operational readiness of the unit.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare assigned equipment for inspection.
2. Conduct inspection of assigned equipment.
3. Inspect preventative and corrective maintenance.
4. Supervise equipment maintenance.
5. Supervise maintenance related programs.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 11-5820-1172-13 Operator and Maintenance Manual, Defense Advanced GPS Receiver (DAGR) Satellite Signals Navigation Set AN/PSN-13
8. TM 11-5820-890-10-8 SINCGARS Radio Sets, Operators Manual
9. TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)
10. TM 11-5985-262-14 Antenna AS 1729/VRC
11. TM 3-4230-204-12&P Operator's Manual for M11 PDA
12. TM 3-6665-307-10 Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Detector Kit
13. TM 5-2590-214-10 Operator's Manual, Roller, Mine Clearing: Track-Width, Tank-Mounted
14. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
15. TM 9-1005-212-25/FM 23-65 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2
16. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual Machine Gun, Cal .50
17. TM 9-1005-313-23&P Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
18. TM 9-2590-509-23&P Operator's Manual Mine Clearing Blade for M1A1 Tank

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CMDC-1004 1802-VOPS-1001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-7004 TANK-LOG-6003

---

**1802-VOPS-2002:** Supervise the Operation of the Mine Clearing Blade and Tracked Width Mine Plow

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank with Mine Clearing Blade and Tracked Width Mine Plow.

**STANDARD:** To establish a lane through an obstacle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct pre-operational checks.
2. Direct the employment of the Mine Clearing Blade and Tracked Width Mine Plow.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 11476A-OI/1 Multi-Purpose Tank Dozer Blade for the M1A1 MBT
5. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
6. TM 9-2590-509-23&P Operator's Manual Mine Clearing Blade for M1A1 Tank

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1003 1802-VOPS-1001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5022 TANK-MANV-5028

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**7007. 1000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**1802-CBTS-1001:** Employ Fire Support (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order and a fire support plan.

**STANDARD:** To support the ground scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine available fire support assets.
2. Determine fire support requirements.
3. Establish communication with the supporting agency.
4. Request fires from supporting agency.
5. Employ fires in support of maneuver.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
6. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-2001	TANK-FSPT-5001	TANK-MANV-5012
TANK-MANV-5016	TANK-MANV-5022	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	SAVT	Team Hours	5	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-CBTS-1003:** Plan a Breach

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and higher headquarters operations order.

**STANDARD:** In order to integrate breach planning into an operation order.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Task-organize forces.
2. Coordinate fire support.
3. Plan for obstacle intelligence.
4. Incorporate breaching tenets.



5. Incorporate breaching fundamentals.
6. Plan for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
7. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6011                      TANK-MANV-7012

---

**1802-CMDC-1003:** Communicate Using Visual Signals

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank/unit and associated SL-3.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver a tank/unit using non-verbal communication.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Communicate using hand and arm signals to control vehicles.
2. Communicate using flashlights to control vehicles.
3. Communicate using flags to control vehicles.
4. Identify standard flags, lights, and markers used to control armored vehicles

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5002                      TANK-MANV-5003                      TANK-MANV-5025

---

**1802-CMDC-1004:** Conduct Unit Training

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit.

**STANDARD:** To meet unit training objectives.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Plan unit training.
2. Implement unit training.
3. Supervise and evaluate training effectiveness.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 1553.3B Unit Training Management (UTM)
2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
4. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-C2-7004

---

**1802-CMDC-1005:** Conduct Troop Leading Procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a scenario and higher headquarters operation order.

**STANDARD:** To plan and prepare for operations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Begin the planning and assess METT-T.
2. Arrange for reconnaissance via map, imagery, UAS or recon patrol.
3. Make reconnaissance and confirm SALUTE, KOCOA, routes and positions.
4. Complete the plan and develop operations order.
5. Issue orders.
6. Supervise by conducting brief backs, PCC/PCIs and rehearsals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-5001	TANK-FSPT-6001	TANK-MANV-5002
TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5016	TANK-MANV-5023
TANK-MANV-5025	TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6012	

---

**1802-GNRY-1001:** Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and all associated training devices.

**STANDARD:** To pass all tests in accordance with MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct Ammunition Identification.
2. Conduct Vehicle Identification.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M240 7.62mm machine gun.
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M48 .50 Cal machine gun.
5. Perform MRS update.
6. Reload 120mm main gun.
7. Conduct Crew Fire Evacuation Drill.
8. Evacuate an injured crewman.
9. Boresight M1A1 tank main gun.
10. Conduct firing circuit check on the M256 breechblock.
11. Perform Failure to Fire (Misfire) Procedures on Abrams main gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: Boresight only.

---

**1802-GNRY-1003:** Direct the Engagement Process (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit.

**STANDARD:** To destroy or neutralize a threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-5003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).

---

**1802-GNRY-1004:** Perform Individual Actions to Unload Stuck Main Gun Round

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To return main gun back to operational status.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify stuck round.

2. Remove stuck round.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3010

---

**1802-GNRY-1005:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So that center of impact of the last round fired is within .15 mils of the aiming point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Fire for confirmation with KE.
4. Record data.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for CE.
6. Conduct precision alignment of the GAS.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 rounds per tank
CA31 Ctg, 120mm TP-T M1002	4 rounds per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-GNRY-1006:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a stationary tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.
3. Zero Coax.
4. Record readings for both boresight and zero.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	N

NOTES: This system will only train the Gunner and Tank Commander. It does not incorporate the Driver and Loader.

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	100 rounds per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-GNRY-1007:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.
3. Boresight both the day and thermal sights.
4. Zero day sight.
5. Zero thermal sight.
6. Record readings for both the day and thermal sights.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-GNRY-1008:** Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a stationary or moving tank with a three-man crew and targets.

**STANDARD:** Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare tank commander's station.
2. Operate tank commander's station.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006 TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	200 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).

---

**1802-GNRY-1009:** Perform Individual Actions to Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL



**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the fire control system is operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Identify discrepancies.
4. Record data.
5. Correct discrepancies.
6. Record corrected data.
7. Complete AACs.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** AAC solution board and Muzzle Boresighting Device.

---

**1802-GNRY-1010:** Load the Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, all associated training devices, and a fire command.

**STANDARD:** 1 round in 7 seconds or less.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive fire command.
2. Select ammunition.
3. Load main gun.
4. Clear the path of recoil.
5. Ensure ammunition door is closed.
6. Arm Breech arming handle.
7. Announce "UP."

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-

- Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
  4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006 TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:** Sabot, HEAT, MPAT, Canister, MPHE (when available) or Dummy rounds.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1802. See Appendix G for further detail.
2. This event does not meet live-fire prerequisites.

---

**1802-GNRY-1011:** Evacuate an Injured Crewman

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, associated equipment and crew.

**STANDARD:** To remove injured personnel from a tank without causing additional harm.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Initiate crew evacuation procedures.
2. Conduct crew evacuation procedures.
3. Adhere to all safety precautions.
4. Move to a safe location.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3005

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of

1802. See Appendix G for further detail.  
2. This event does not meet live-fire prerequisites.

---

**1802-INT-1001:** Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace (IPB)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order and a map of the battle space.

**STANDARD:** To develop IPB products as part of an operations order.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Gather all required intelligence.
2. Define the battlespace.
3. Describe the battlespace effects.
4. Evaluate the adversary.
5. Determine adversary courses of action.
6. Integrate into operations order.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-INT-5001

---

**1802-INT-1002:** Execute Intelligence Collection Effort

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order and map of the battlespace.

**STANDARD:** To gather information and data to answer Priority Information Requirements (PIRs).

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify collection assets.
2. Coordinate with collection assets to answer PIRs.
3. Receive collected information.
4. Report to higher.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
3. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
4. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-INT-5001

TANK-INT-5002

TANK-MANV-5019

---

**1802-REC-1001:** Conduct Reconnaissance Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized force and direction from higher.

**STANDARD:** In order to satisfy higher headquarters intelligence requirements.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Coordinate fire support.
3. Issue order.
4. Employ forces to conduct a zone, area, and route reconnaissance to meet collection requirement.
5. Report intelligence to higher.
6. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-INT-5001

TANK-MANV-5001

TANK-MANV-5019

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1802-TAC-1001:** Conduct Offensive Operations (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and operations order from higher.

**STANDARD:** To effectively employ a tank unit in the offense.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive the commander's order.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications for tank employment.
3. Issue warning order.
4. Coordinate and prepare.
5. Brief mission.
6. Execute mission.
7. Send reports.
8. Conduct actions on contact.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-6001	TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003
TANK-MANV-6011	TANK-MANV-6012	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	5	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1802-TAC-1002:** Direct a Tank Unit (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit, and associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** To control tactical actions in accordance with METT-T.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct planning.

2. Issue orders.
3. Direct movement techniques.
4. Control formations.
5. Conduct actions on contact.
6. Determine battle drills.
7. Send reports.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
8. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
10. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-5002	TANK-MANV-5003
TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5005	TANK-MANV-5006
TANK-MANV-5007	TANK-MANV-5008	TANK-MANV-5010
TANK-MANV-5011	TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5013
TANK-MANV-5014	TANK-MANV-5015	TANK-MANV-5016
TANK-MANV-5017	TANK-MANV-5018	TANK-MANV-5022
TANK-MANV-5023	TANK-MANV-5025	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	3	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1802-TAC-1003:** Direct Security Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized force and direction from higher.

**STANDARD:** To provide early warning, real-time information, reaction time, maneuver space, and destroy/repel the enemy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task-organize.
3. Issue order.
4. Establish contact with the enemy.
5. Report enemy operations to higher.
6. Maintain contact with the enemy.
7. Develop situation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5019                      TANK-MANV-6015

---

**1802-TAC-1004:** Control Direct Fires (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized force and direction from higher.

**STANDARD:** To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Emplace weapon systems.
2. Develop fire control measures.
3. Determine fire pattern.
4. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
5. Determine engagement priority.
6. Direct weapons control status.
7. Determine engagement technique.
8. Issue fire command.
9. Control rates of fire.
10. Send reports.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5010
TANK-MANV-5011	TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5014
TANK-MANV-5016	TANK-MANV-5022	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	3	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-TAC-1005:** Develop an Engagement Area (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized tank unit.

**STANDARD:** Which integrates all available assets in the development of a deliberate defense.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify likely enemy avenue of approach.
2. Identify enemy scheme of maneuver.
3. Determine where to kill the enemy.
4. Plan and integrate obstacles.
5. Emplace weapon systems.
6. Plan and integrate indirect fires.
7. Conduct rehearsals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5016



**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

NOTES: Hours included in collective events.

Partial	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	2	N
---------	-----	------	------------	---	---

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1802-TAC-1006:** Establish a Battle Position

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized tank unit and operations order.

**STANDARD:** To deny enemy forces from specific terrain for a specific amount of time.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Select a location.
3. Occupy a covered and concealed position.
4. Establish local security.
5. Conduct leaders reconnaissance.
6. Assign individual fighting positions.
7. Occupy the battle position.
8. Develop direct fire plan.
9. Report occupied.
10. Conduct engagement area development.
11. Assign alternate, supplementary, and subsequent fighting positions.
12. Report established.
13. Conduct rehearsals.
14. Conduct continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5016

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1802-VOPS-1001:** Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, and all associated SL-3.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the operational readiness of the tank.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct vehicle inspection of tank unit.
2. Inspect completed maintenance work.
3. Monitor Maintenance Progress Report.
4. Supervise equipment maintenance.
5. Supervise maintenance related programs.

**REFERENCES:**

1. LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank
2. MCO 4400.16\_ Uniform Material Movement and Issue Priority System (UMMIPS)
3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
4. NAVMC 10245 Equipment Repair Order (ERO)
5. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
6. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
7. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
8. TM 11-5855-262-10 Operator's Manual, AN/PVS-7
9. TM 4700-15/1\_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures
10. TM 9-1005-212-25/FM 23-65 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2
11. TM 9-1005-313-23&P Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
12. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operators Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
13. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams
14. UM 4400.125 GCSS-MC Users Manual
15. UM 4400-124 FMF SASSY Using Unit Procedures

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

1802-VOPS-2001                      1802-VOPS-2002

---

**1802-VOPS-1002:** Prepare, Operate, and Secure Tank Commander's Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, SL-3, and references.

**STANDARD:** To ensure operation of the tank.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare commander's station.
2. Operate commander's station.
3. Secure commander's station.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1802. See Appendix G for further detail.

---

**1802-VOPS-1003:** Perform Individual Actions to Recover Tank

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a disabled tank requiring recovery.

**STANDARD:** To return the tank to operational status.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare disabled vehicle for recovery.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Utilize additional vehicles if required.
5. Tow disabled tank.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-CSS-4001                      TANK-MANV-4009

---

**1802-VOPS-1004:** Perform Individual Actions for Emergency Procedures on a Tank

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an emergency.

**STANDARD:** To prevent injury to personnel or further damage to equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Service air cleaner after CBRN attack.
2. Perform immediate action for loss of engine power.
3. Perform immediate action for loss of steering.
4. Perform immediate action for loss of service brakes.
5. Unlock stuck parking brake.
6. Open breechblock.
7. Close breechblock.
8. Perform immediate action for engine failure to shut down.
9. Perform immediate action for starter failure to disengage.
10. Perform bypass primary fuel filter.
11. Perform immediate action for vehicle master power failure to power down.
12. Decontaminate tank.
13. Verify operational readiness of fire control system following a nuclear explosion.
14. Perform armor damage immediate action.
15. Use battle override.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010                      TANK-MANV-4007

---

**1802-VOPS-1005:** Supervise Tank Recovery Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and a disabled tank capable of being towed.

**STANDARD:** Using self-recovery techniques or other recovery assets.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Direct local security.
2. Secure disabled vehicle.
3. Analyze situation.
4. Order recovery of vehicle.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-CSS-4001	TANK-CSS-5001	TANK-CSS-6001
TANK-CSS-7001	TANK-MANV-4009	

---

**1802-VOPS-1006:** Conduct Abandon Tank Drill

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To evacuate the crew in the event in the event of an emergency.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assess situation.
2. Give order to abandon tank.
3. Perform destruction procedures as required.
4. Assemble and account for crew.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005

TANK-MANV-4007

TANK-MANV-4009

TANK-VOPS-3004

---

**1802-VOPS-1007:** Load Batteries Onto a Tank

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and all associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** Moving three (3) batteries from ground to the back deck without losing control in a time limit of 1 minute 50 seconds.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Grasp the battery.
2. Lift battery.
3. Place battery onto back of tank.

**REFERENCES:** TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operators Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** 1802-VOPS-2001

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1802. See Appendix G for further detail.

---

**1802-VOPS-1008:** Hook Up Disabled Vehicle for Tow

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a disabled tank requiring recovery and necessary equipment.

**STANDARD:** Tow bar attached ready for tow of disabled vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Lift tow bar.
2. Move tow bar to disabled vehicle.
3. Attach tow bar to disabled tank.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5015

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1802. See Appendix G for further detail.

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

MOS 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENT

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	8000	8-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	8001	8-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. . . . .	8002	8-2
PREREQUISITES . . . . .	8003	8-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES. . . . .	8004	8-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS. . . . .	8005	8-8
2000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	8006	8-10
1000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	8007	8-43



TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

MOS 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENT

**8000. PURPOSE.** The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Armor Marine. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident career progression training.

**8001. EVENT CODING.** Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1812" indicating that the event is for Armor Marines.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for Armor Marines are:

CBTS - Combat Support	LOG - Logistics
CMDC - Command and Control	TAC - Tactical Operation
COND - Conditioning	TRNG - Training
EXPD - Expeditionary Operations	RNGE - Range
GNRY - Gunnery	VOPS - Vehicle Operations
INT - Intelligence	

c. Field three - This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events.

**8002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.** Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website).

Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

**8003. PREREQUISITES.** The 1812 Armor Marine will have completed the Marine Armor Crewmember Course before reporting to a tank battalion.

**8004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES**

**1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY.** The Armor Marine will complete the Marine Armor Crewmember Course. Upon graduation the Armor Marine will conduct

additional 2000-Level training in a tank unit in a variety of billets. Level 2000 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

**2. BILLET: Tank Crewman.** The Tank Crewman carries out the orders of the Tank Platoon Commander. He is proficient with all T/O weapons on the M1A1 tank and first echelon preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS). He is responsible for executing all duties commensurate with the tactical and technical responsibilities as an M1A1 Tank Crewman.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Proficient in use and employment of all weapons organic to the M1A1 tank.

(2) Conducts preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on assigned tanks and equipment.

(3) Performs self-aid and buddy aid.

(4) Assumes mission oriented protective posture against the effects in a CBRN environment.

(5) Communicates using proper communications procedures with organic wired and wireless communications.

(6) Capable of preparing driver's, loader's, and gunner's stations on the M1A1 tank for operation.

(7) Conducts tactical operations as part of a tank platoon.

(8) Performs operator maintenance on Track Width Mine Plow, Dozer Blade, and Deep Water Fording Kit and is proficient in employment of each.

(9) Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.

(10) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(11) Maintains ordnance vehicle log book.

(12) Proficient at recovery operations.

(13) Proficient on camouflaging the M1A1 tank.

**3. BILLET: Tank Commander.** The senior 1812 Armor Marine on the tank. The Tank Commander leads a crew of four and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the tank and all associated collateral gear. The Tank Commander operates the Tank Commanders Weapons Station.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the crew.

(2) Maintains vehicle administrative documents, including the ordnance vehicle logbook.

(3) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and function of the tank.

(4) Responsible for the tactical employment of an M1A1 main battle tank, during training and combat operations.

(5) Develops subordinates in MOS, leadership, and basic Marine skills.

(6) Performs operator maintenance on Track Width Mine Plow, Dozer Blade, and Deep Water Fording Kit and is proficient in employment of each.

(7) Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.

(8) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Proficient at recovery operations.

**4. BILLET: Section Leader.** The senior 1812 Armor Marine in the tank section who leads all vehicles crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the section.

(2) Executes Platoon Commander's commands related to employment and function of the tank section.

(3) Conducts tactical operations as part of a tank platoon and/or larger force.

(4) Develops subordinates in MOS, leadership, and basic Marine skills.

(5) Responsible for the tactical employment of a section of M1A1 main battle tanks, during training and combat operations.

(6) Performs operator maintenance on Track Width Mine Plow, Dozer Blade, and Deep Water Fording Kit and is proficient in employment of each.

(7) Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.

(8) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Proficient at recovery operations.

**5. BILLET: Tank Platoon Sergeant.** The senior 1812 and second in command of the tank platoon. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the Tank Platoon Commander on training, welfare, and administrative issues.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the platoon.

(2) Responsible for the daily, weekly, monthly PMCS of the vehicles, SL-3, and collateral equipment within platoon.

(3) Responsible for maintenance management functions of the platoon.

(4) Responsible for the tactical employment of a section of M1A1 main battle tanks, during training and combat operations.

(5) Advises supported unit commander on tank employment.

(6) Assumes command in Platoon Commanders absence.

(7) Coordinates logistical support for the tank platoon.

(8) Proficient at recovery operations.

(9) Conducts tactical operations as a tank platoon and part of a larger force.

(10) Train tank crews for semi-annual tank gunnery qualification.

6. **BILLET: Company Master Gunner.** The Company Master Gunner has completed the M1A1 Master Gunners course and is responsible to the Company Commander for the training and employment of M1A1 tank and its weapons systems.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the Company Commander in all matters pertaining to tank gunnery and employment of all weapons systems within the tank company.

(2) Evaluates and grades the company tank crews during their semi-annual pre-qualification tables (Tank Tables II-V, and VII-XII).

(3) As the company ammunition SNCO, allocates ammunition based on the company's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan and reallocate ammunition as needed to support all unit training requirements.

(4) Acts as company liaison to the battalion on all matters pertaining to Range/MPRC as well as all other ranges and training locations aboard the base.

(5) Mentors, advises and assists the company in tank gunnery sustainment, tank gunnery preparation, and the Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (TCGST).

(6) Serves as the company Senior Instructor Operator for the Advanced Gunnery Training System (AGTS) simulator, ensuring that all tank crews qualify through the crew training program.

**7. BILLET: Company Tank Leader.** The senior 1812 Armor Marine in the tank company. Advises the company commander on training, logistics, and operations of the tank company.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Advises the company commander in monitoring, conducting, reporting, and supervising unit training.
- (2) Coordinates and evaluates company individual and unit training.
- (3) Conducts tracking of all tactical actions in order to advise on tactical employment and plan for logistical support.
- (4) Coordinates assembly area activities.
- (5) Assists the Executive Officer in planning future operations.
- (6) Advises the tank Company Commander on all 1812 Armor Marine matters.
- (7) Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
- (8) Trains tank Platoon Sergeants in the performance of their duties.
- (9) Mentors the Staff Non-Commissioned Officers of the company.

**8. BILLET: Battalion Master Gunner.** The Battalion Master Gunner is the senior Master Gunner billet in the tank battalion. The Battalion Master Gunner is responsible to the Battalion Commander for the training and employment of all M1A1 weapons systems.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Advises the Battalion Commander and the Operations Officer in all matters pertaining to tank gunnery and employment of all weapons systems within the battalion.
- (2) Accurately evaluates and grades the battalion's tank crews during their semi-annual tank table VI qualification. Assist Company Commanders and Master Gunners in the development of collective tables.
- (3) As the battalion ammunition SNCO, allocate ammunition based on the battalion's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan and reallocate ammunition as needed to support all unit training requirements.
- (4) Serves as battalion liaison to range operations on all matters pertaining to Range/MPRC as well as all other ranges/training locations aboard the base.
- (5) Mentors, advises and assists the Company Master Gunners in tank gunnery sustainment, tank gunnery preparation, and TCGST.
- (6) Serves as the Battalion Senior Instructor Operator (SIO) for the Advanced Gunnery Training System (AGTS) simulator ensuring that all tank crews qualify through the crew training program.

9. **BILLET: Battalion Logistics Chief.** The senior 1812 MSgt in the battalion.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Senior enlisted advisor to the S-4 Officer on all unit logistical requirements pertaining to training, operations, and personnel.

(2) Provide technical assistance, guidance and recommendations to the S-4 Officer on all logistical matters in garrison and the field.

(3) Coordinates and supervises battalion embarkation plans.

(4) Monitors battalion hazardous material section.

(5) Serves as senior enlisted in the combat trains who supervises synchronization of functions of logistics at all echelons of support.

(6) Develops, coordinates, and supervises the execution of all the internal and external logistical support for the battalion, to include all attached units, as directed by the Battalion Commander.

(7) Oversee the professional development of all enlisted Marines and SNCOs within the S-4 through professional military education, experiences, and personal example.

(8) Supervise the maintenance and priorities of work as it pertains to facilities to include improvements.

(9) Coordinate with Base Installation and Logistics (I&L) for standard upkeep and repairs to battalion facilities.

(10) Coordinate with each company and commodity to ensure all six sub-functions of logistics are synchronized internally and externally for efficient use of assets.

(11) Organize, train, and supervise the battalion combat trains during peacetime and combat.

10. **BILLET: Battalion Operations Chief.** The senior 1812 Armor Marine in the battalion.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Provides input into the unit's METL and supervises the timely production of appropriate training plans.

(2) Supervises the employment, synchronization of the warfighting functions, and enforces the battle rhythm of the Alpha Command.

(3) Supervises the implementation of the commander's planning guidance within the staff and subordinate elements.

(4) Provides input to amphibious landing plans.

(5) Provides input into the different echelons of deployment requirements.

(6) Assists in verifying DRRS-MC data and timely submission.

(7) Coordinate the operations section embark plan.

(8) Manage, provide career counseling, and assign all 1812 Armor Marines in the battalion.

(9) Provide oversight of all plans, operations and training for the battalion.

(10) Establish the Combat Operations Center and ensure efficient operation in a field environment.

(11) Execute daily training and operations within the battalion.

(12) Develop, implement, and supervise the battalion's training schedules, tank and AT/TOW gunnery programs, and all field training exercises.

(13) Manage all required MOS schools and additional duty schools for the battalion.

(14) Ensure the battalion remains compliant with all applicable orders and directives.

(15) Ensure all deploying Marines and sailors have completed pre-deployment training.

(16) Certified as an Operations and Tactics Instructor (OTI) prior to assuming the billet. See MCO 3502.7 and Command and Control T&R Manual (2000-Level Individual Tasks) for specific functions/responsibilities.

#### 8005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
<b>2000 Level Events</b>		
1812-CBTS-2001	Direct Engineering Operations	8-10
1812-CBTS-2002	Plan a Breach	8-10
1812-CBTS-2003	Employ Indirect Fire (S/L)	8-11
1812-CMDC-2001	Plan Operations	8-12
1812-CMDC-2003	Conduct Unit Training	8-12
1812-CMDC-2004	Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop	8-13
1812-CMDC-2005	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures	8-14
1812-COND-2001	March with a Fighting Load	8-14
1812-CSS-2001	Monitor Unit Table of Organization and Equipment Modification (T/O&E) Procedures	8-15
1812-EXPD-2002	Plan Transportation Support for a Unit Operation	8-15
1812-GNRY-2001	Perform Individual Actions to Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun	8-16
1812-GNRY-2002	Perform Individual Actions to Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun	8-17
1812-GNRY-2003	Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System (S/L)	8-18

1812-GNRY-2004	Perform Individual Actions to Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)	8-19
1812-GNRY-2006	Supervise Boresighting of a Tank (S/L)	8-20
1812-GNRY-2007	Apply the Principles of the Engagement Process (S/L)	8-20
1812-GNRY-2008	Supervise Zeroing Tank Main Gun	8-21
1812-INT-2001	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace (IPB)	8-22
1812-LOG-2002	Conduct Tactical Logistics (S/L)	8-23
1812-RNGE-2001	Develop Surface Danger Zones (SDZs)	8-24
1812-RNGE-2002	Design Ranges in Support of Expeditionary Operations	8-24
1812-TAC-2001	Direct Quartering Party Operations	8-25
1812-TAC-2003	Advise Supported Unit on Tank Employment	8-25
1812-TAC-2004	Tactically Employ a Tank as Part of a Larger Unit (S/L)	8-26
1812-TAC-2005	Employ a Tank Section (S/L)	8-27
1812-TAC-2006	Employ a Tank Platoon (S/L)	8-28
1812-TAC-2007	Direct Security Operations	8-29
1812-TAC-2008	Control Section Direct Fires (S/L)	8-30
1812-TAC-2009	Develop an Engagement Area (S/L)	8-31
1812-TAC-2010	Control Platoon Direct Fires (S/L)	8-32
1812-TAC-2011	Establish a Tank Fighting Position	8-33
1812-TAC-2012	Establish a Battle Position	8-34
1812-TAC-2013	Conduct a Breach (S/L)	8-35
1812-TRNG-2001	Teach Employment of Weapons (S/L)	8-36
1812-TRNG-2002	Facilitate Simulation Training Program	8-37
1812-TRNG-2003	Manage the Unit Gunnery Training Program	8-37
1812-TRNG-2004	Manage Ammunition Resources	8-38
1812-VOPS-2001	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	8-38
1812-VOPS-2002	Supervise Tank Recovery Operations	8-39
1812-VOPS-2003	Direct Survivability and Fight Back Capabilities	8-40
1812-VOPS-2004	Conduct Maintenance Management	8-41
1812-VOPS-2006	Tactically Employ the Mine Clearing Blade and Tracked Width Mine Plow	8-42
<b>1000 Level Events</b>		
1812-CMDC-1001	Communicate Using Visual Signals	8-42
1812-GNRY-1001	Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)	8-43
1812-GNRY-1003	Perform Individual Actions to Unload Stuck Main Gun Round	8-44
1812-GNRY-1004	Unload Stuck Case Base from Main Gun	8-44
1812-GNRY-1005	Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun From Loader's Station	8-45
1812-GNRY-1006	Perform Individual Actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun	8-46
1812-GNRY-1007	Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)	8-46
1812-GNRY-1008	Evacuate an Injured Crewman	8-47
1812-GNRY-1009	Load the Main Gun	8-48
1812-TAC-1001	Employ Terrain Driving Techniques	8-49
1812-VOPS-1001	Troubleshoot Tank	8-50
1812-VOPS-1002	Perform Individual Actions to Recover Tank	8-50
1812-VOPS-1003	Perform Individual Actions for Emergency Procedures on a Tank	8-51
1812-VOPS-1004	Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	8-52
1812-VOPS-1005	Prepare, Operate, and Secure Assigned Station	8-52
1812-VOPS-1006	Conduct Maintenance on Auxiliary Equipment	8-53
1812-VOPS-1007	Load Batteries Onto a Tank	8-54



1812-VOPS-1008	Hook Up Disabled Vehicle for Tow	8-55
----------------	----------------------------------	------

**8006. 2000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**1812-CBTS-2001:** Direct Engineering Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and engineering assets.

**STANDARD:** To integrate armor and supporting capabilities during mobility/counter-mobility and survivability operations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Coordinate employment in support of mobility operations.
2. Coordinate employment of tanks support of counter-mobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support for survivability operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
2. FM 5-101 Mobility
3. FM 5-102 Countermobility
4. FM 5-103 Survivability
5. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-17.6 Survivability Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5022                      TANK-MANV-5028                      TANK-MANV-6011

---

**1812-CBTS-2002:** Plan a Breach

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and higher headquarters operations order.

**STANDARD:** In order to integrate breach planning into an operation order.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Task-organize forces.
2. Coordinate fire support.
3. Plan for obstacle intelligence.
4. Incorporate breaching tenets.

5. Incorporate breaching fundamentals.
6. Plan for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
7. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-6011

---

**1812-CBTS-2003:** Employ Indirect Fire (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order and a fire support plan.

**STANDARD:** To support the ground scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine available fire support assets.
2. Determine fire support requirements.
3. Establish communication with the supporting agency.
4. Request fires from supporting agency.
5. Adjust fires as needed.
6. Refine and record target location, as required.
7. End fire mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
6. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FSPT-5001	TANK-MANV-5002	TANK-MANV-5010
TANK-MANV-5011	TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5014
TANK-MANV-5016	TANK-MANV-5017	TANK-MANV-5019
TANK-MANV-5022		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	SAVT	Team Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-CMDC-2001:** Plan Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The purpose of this task is to develop a concept of support for an operation and advise the unit commander.

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To direct the actions of a tank unit.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Analyze higher operations order.
2. Advise supported unit commander on tank employment.
3. Conduct estimate of supportability.
4. Develop operations order.
5. Issue operations order.
6. Conduct rehearsals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-5003	TANK-FPRO-5004	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-LOG-4001	TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5015
TANK-MANV-5023		

---

**1812-CMDC-2003:** Conduct Unit Training

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given training directives and a commander's training guidance.

**STANDARD:** To meet training objectives.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Develop unit training.
2. Implement unit training.
3. Supervise unit training.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 1553.3B Unit Training Management (UTM)
2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
4. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-C2-7004

---

**1812-CMDC-2004:** Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given two or more stationary tanks and communication wire WD-1/TT.

**STANDARD:** So that communications between tanks can be made without emitting radio signals.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure vehicle master power switch is set to 'ON.'
2. Turn on Indicator Control CD-82/VRC on the AN/VRC 92D radio system.
3. Connect one wire end to each Telephone/Remote post on the Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.
4. Run connected wire to next tank to be connected in the same manner.
5. Conduct a communications check external to the tank to verify that the last loop is operational.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 11-5280-890-10-1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-19

8. TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-4010

---

**1812-CMDC-2005:** Conduct Troop Leading Procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a scenario and higher headquarters operation order.

**STANDARD:** To plan and prepare for operations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Begin the planning and assess METT-T.
2. Arrange for reconnaissance via map, imagery, UAS or recon patrol.
3. Make reconnaissance and confirm SALUTE, KOCOA, routes and positions.
4. Complete the plan and develop operations order.
5. Issue orders.
6. Supervise by conducting brief backs, PCC/PCIs and rehearsals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-5001	TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002
TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-GNRY-5001	TANK-GNRY-5002
TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-MANV-4010
TANK-MANV-4012	TANK-MANV-5023	

---

**1812-COND-2001:** March with a Fighting Load

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an individual weapon, a fighting load, and as part of a unit movement.

**STANDARD:** To complete a 15-kilometer march within four hours.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assemble the load for the march.

2. Don the load for the march.
3. Complete a 15 kilometer march.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1812. Prior to executing this event, Marines will conduct a 5K and 10K march with the fighting load. Individual field equipment weight is not to exceed 55 pounds.

---

**1812-CSS-2001:** Monitor Unit Table of Organization and Equipment Modification (T/O&E) Procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a using unit account and a T/O&E.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the T/O&E allowances are properly maintained to support the mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Validate unit T/O&E excesses and deficiencies.
2. Supervise the adjustment of the unit table of equipment.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 4400.150\_ DON'T DELETE-OTHER SCHOOLS USE THIS-BESIDES, read the cover-the other .150 is wrong Consumer-Level Supply Policy

---

**1812-EXPD-2002:** Plan Transportation Support for a Unit Operation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Battalion Logistics Chief, Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a deployment order.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring transportation support, when integrated with the other

functional areas of logistics, satisfies the unit's movement in support of the assigned mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Participate in unit embarkation planning.
2. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution (FDP&E).
3. Identify transportation requirements.
4. Coordinate movement planning.
5. Support deployment and distribution planning through the use of Automated Information Systems (AIS).
6. Coordinate with Distribution Management Office (DMO).
7. Coordinate with movement control agencies.
8. Identify organic/non-organic support capabilities.
9. Prepare equipment and cargo for embarkation.
10. Prepare hazmat and cargo for transportation.
11. Supervise Landing Force Support Party (LFSP) operations.
12. Supervise material handling.
13. Supervise rail head operations.
14. Supervise motor transport operations.
15. Supervise the execution of the unit embarkation plan.

**REFERENCES:**

1. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-02.2 Amphibious Embarkation
3. MCO 4500.9 Defense Transportation Regulations
4. MCO 4630.6 Military Airlift Command Requirement
5. MCO P4450.12 Storage and Handling of Hazardous Materials
6. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
7. MCTP 3-40F Transportation Operations
8. MCTP 3-40H MAGTF Supply Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-7004                      TANK-LOG-6003

---

**1812-GNRY-2001:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Gunner, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.

3. Zero Coax.
4. Record readings for both boresight and zero.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3004	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008	TANK-GNRY-3009	TANK-GNRY-3010
TANK-GNRY-4001		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	N

NOTES: This system will only train the Gunner and Tank Commander. It does not incorporate the Driver and Loader.

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	100 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-2002:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.



3. Boresight both the day and thermal sights.
4. Zero day sight.
5. Zero thermal sight.
6. Record readings for both the day and thermal sights.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008	TANK-GNRY-3009	TANK-GNRY-3010
TANK-GNRY-4001		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-2003:** Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** In order to provide obscuration for the vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect grenade discharger.
2. Power up commander's station.
3. Conduct firing circuit check.
4. Power down commander's station.
5. Load smoke grenades.
6. Power up commander's station.
7. Operate M250/M257 grenade launcher system.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-4007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
G826 Gren, Lnchr Smoke Screening IR M76	16 grenades per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-2004:** Perform Individual Actions to Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the fire control system is operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Identify discrepancies.
4. Record data.
5. Correct discrepancies.
6. Record corrected data.
7. Complete AACs.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008	TANK-GNRY-3009	TANK-GNRY-3010
TANK-GNRY-4002		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** AAC solution board and Muzzle Boresighting Device.

---

**1812-GNRY-2006:** Supervise Boresighting of a Tank (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, associated equipment, and references.

**STANDARD:** To calibrate the fire control system.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Coordinate crew PMCS.
2. Inspect collimation of Muzzle Boresight Device (MBD).
3. Direct conduct of boresight procedures.
4. Verify recorded data.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

---

**1812-GNRY-2007:** Apply the Principles of the Engagement Process (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To destroy or neutralize the threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007	TANK-GNRY-3008
TANK-GNRY-3009	TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4001
TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-GNRY-5001
TANK-GNRY-5002	TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-4001
TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007
TANK-MANV-4008	TANK-MANV-4010	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**1812-GNRY-2008:** Supervise Zeroing Tank Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank with crew.

**STANDARD:** So that zeroing is performed in accordance with TM 08953A-10/1-2 and the center of impact of the last round fired is within .15 mils of the aiming point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Supervise boresight of the tank.
2. Supervise firing for zero with KE.
3. Supervise firing for confirmation with KE.
4. Supervise recording of the date by the gunner.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for CE.
6. Supervise the precision alignment of the GAS.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-12B Tank Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1005                      1812-GNRY-1006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007
TANK-MANV-4010		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M962	4 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 rounds per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002	4 rounds per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-INT-2001:** Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace (IPB)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given intelligence products.

**STANDARD:** To determine the enemy most likely course of action (EMLCOA).

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Gather all required intelligence.
2. Define the battlespace.
3. Describe the battlespace effects.
4. Evaluate the adversary.
5. Determine adversary courses of action.
6. Integrate into operations order.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

1802-CMDC-1005	TANK-FPRO-5001	TANK-FPRO-5003
TANK-FPRO-5004	TANK-INT-5001	TANK-INT-5002
TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-MANV-5001	TANK-MANV-5019

---

**1812-LOG-2002:** Conduct Tactical Logistics (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Tank Leader

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To sustain the unit.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Plan for unit's logistics requirements.
2. Coordinate tactical logistics.
3. Direct tactical logistics.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCDP 4 Logistics
4. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
5. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-LOG-4001

TANK-LOG-6003

TANK-MANV-4009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	1	Y

NOTES: Hours captured in collective events.

---

**1812-RNGE-2001:** Develop Surface Danger Zones (SDZs)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a requirement to conduct a live-fire training event.

**STANDARD:** To ensure all expended ordnance falls within a previously designated and safe area.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Construct a small arms and machine gun SDZ.
2. Construct a hand grenade and rifle grenade SDZ.
3. Construct a rocket/missile SDZ.
4. Construct an artillery/mortar SDZ.
5. Construct a tank gunnery SDZ.
6. Construct an aerial gunnery SDZ.
7. Construct a combined arms live-fire exercise SDZ.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1\_ Range Safety

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-5003

---

**1812-RNGE-2002:** Design Ranges in Support of Expeditionary Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given the requirement to conduct training in an expeditionary environment in the absence of preplanned ranges.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish safe and effective standards based training.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Coordinate with higher headquarters.
2. Coordinate for required air-space.
3. Develop range regulations.
4. Construct ranges.
5. Establish communication requirements in support of range operations.
6. Determine resource requirements in support of range operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions
3. JP 3-09.3 Close Air Support
4. MCO 3570.1\_ Range Safety
5. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
6. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery
7. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-5003

---

**1812-TAC-2001:** Direct Quartering Party Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT



**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To establish an assembly area.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Coordinate the location and requirements for the AA.
2. Conduct reconnaissance to find a suitable location.
3. Task-organize forces.
4. Supervise local security efforts.
5. Direct tactical movement.
6. Verify suitability of assembly area.
7. Mark and guide forces into position.
8. Conduct continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TAC-2003:** Advise Supported Unit on Tank Employment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit, a supported unit, and associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** To properly employ armor in support of higher headquarters.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Advise on the capabilities and limitations of armor.
2. Advise on armor employment in the operating environment.
3. Advise on armor employment across the range of military operations.
4. Advise on Tank-Infantry integration.
5. Advise on the employment of armor in mobility/counter-mobility operations.
6. Advise on the conduct of gap crossing operations.
7. Advise on logistical requirements for operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 7-28 Jungle Operations

5. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-35.1 Mountain Warfare Operations
8. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
9. MCWP 3-35.6 Desert Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5016	TANK-MANV-5019
TANK-MANV-5022	TANK-MANV-5023	TANK-MANV-5028

---

**1812-TAC-2004:** Tactically Employ a Tank as Part of a Larger Unit (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, associated personnel and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To control tactical actions in accordance with METT-T.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare assigned equipment.
2. Prepare crew.
3. Issue orders.
4. Direct movement techniques.
5. Control tank as part of a formation.
6. Conduct actions on contact.
7. Perform battle drills.
8. Send reports.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4012	TANK-MANV-5002	TANK-MANV-5004
TANK-MANV-5013		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
------------------	--------------------	------------------	------------------------	--------------	-----------

Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y
Partial	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	2	N

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TAC-2005:** Employ a Tank Section (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Section Leader

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section, associated personnel and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To control tactical actions  
METT-T.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Issue orders.
3. Direct movement techniques.
4. Control tank section as part of a formation.
5. Conduct actions on contact.
6. Determine battle drills.
7. Send reports.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4001	TANK-MANV-4002
TANK-MANV-4003	TANK-MANV-4004	TANK-MANV-4005
TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-MANV-4008
TANK-MANV-4011	TANK-MANV-4012	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TAC-2006:** Employ a Tank Platoon (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon, associated personnel and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To control tactical actions in accordance with METT-T.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Issue orders.
3. Direct movement techniques.
4. Control formations.
5. Conduct actions on contact.
6. Determine battle drills.
7. Send reports.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
7. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
9. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5002	TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5005
TANK-MANV-5006	TANK-MANV-5007	TANK-MANV-5012
TANK-MANV-5013	TANK-MANV-5016	TANK-MANV-5017
TANK-MANV-5018	TANK-MANV-5021	TANK-MANV-5025

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TAC-2007:** Direct Security Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized force and direction from higher.

**STANDARD:** To provide early warning, real-time information, reaction time, maneuver space, and destroy/repel the enemy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task-organize.
3. Issue order.
4. Establish contact with the enemy.
5. Report enemy operations to higher.
6. Maintain contact with the enemy.
7. Develop situation.
8. Recommend a follow on course of action.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
7. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-FPRO-5001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TAC-2008:** Control Section Direct Fires (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Section Leader

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section and direction from higher.

**STANDARD:** To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assign sectors of fires.
2. Emplace weapon systems.
3. Develop terrain-based fire control measures.
4. Develop threat-based fire control measures.
5. Implement engagement/disengagement criteria.
6. Employ the engagement process.
7. React to platoon fire commands.
8. Issue section fire commands.
9. Control rates of fire.
10. Send reports.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4001	TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006
TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-MANV-4008	TANK-MANV-4010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-TAC-2009:** Develop an Engagement Area (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized tank unit.

**STANDARD:** Which integrates all available assets in the development of a deliberate defense.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify likely enemy avenue of approach.
2. Identify enemy scheme of maneuver.
3. Determine where to kill the enemy.
4. Plan and integrate obstacles.
5. Emplace weapon systems.
6. Plan and integrate indirect fires.
7. Conduct rehearsals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	Y

NOTES: Hours included in collective events.

Partial	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	2	N
---------	-----	------	------------	---	---

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TAC-2010:** Control Platoon Direct Fires (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized tank platoon and direction from higher.

**STANDARD:** To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Emplace weapon systems.
2. Develop fire control measures.
3. Determine fire pattern.
4. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
5. Determine engagement priority.
6. Direct weapons control status.
7. Determine engagement technique.
8. Issue fire command.
9. Control rates of fire.
10. Send reports.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
7. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
8. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-5001	TANK-GNRY-5002	TANK-GNRY-5003
TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5010	TANK-MANV-5011
TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5014	TANK-MANV-5016
TANK-MANV-5017	TANK-MANV-5019	TANK-MANV-6015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
No	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---



**1812-TAC-2011:** Establish a Tank Fighting Position

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and operations order.

**STANDARD:** To allow maximum fire to be placed within an assigned sector of fire and provide protection from enemy fire.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct terrain analysis.
2. Select a location that covers primary and secondary sectors of fire.
3. Make maximum use of available cover and concealment.
4. Maintain local security.
5. Occupy the fighting position.
6. Report occupied.
7. Develop individual fire plan sketch.
8. Employ Multi-Purpose Tank Blade to improve survivability.
9. Take measures to reduce dust that may create a signature.
10. Camouflage the position.
11. Participate in engagement area development.
12. Develop alternate, supplementary, and subsequent fighting positions.
13. Report established.
14. Conduct rehearsals.
15. Conduct continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-17.6 Survivability Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-4010

TANK-VOPS-3001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TAC-2012:** Establish a Battle Position

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section and operations order.

**STANDARD:** To deny enemy forces from specific terrain for a specific amount of time.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Select a location.
3. Occupy a covered and concealed position.
4. Establish local security.
5. Conduct leaders reconnaissance.
6. Assign primary fighting positions.
7. Occupy the battle position.
8. Develop direct fire plan.
9. Report occupied.
10. Participate in engagement area development.
11. Develop alternate, supplementary, and subsequent fighting positions.
12. Report established.
13. Conduct rehearsals.
14. Conduct continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-4009                      TANK-MANV-4010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TAC-2013:** Conduct a Breach (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon and higher headquarters operations order.

**STANDARD:** In order to execute a breach as part of an offensive operation.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Task-organize forces.
2. Coordinate fire support.
3. Plan for obstacle intelligence.
4. Incorporate breaching tenets.
5. Incorporate breaching fundamentals.
6. Plan for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5022

TANK-MANV-5028

TANK-MANV-6011

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	2	N

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**1812-TRNG-2001:** Teach Employment of Weapons (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the unit is able to safely and effectively employ assigned weapons systems.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Teach the geometry of fires.
2. Teach methods of fire and control.
3. Teach limitations/capabilities of organic weapons.
4. Teach methods of engagement.
5. Teach considerations in the employment of grenades and pyrotechnics.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 23-30 Grenade
2. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. TM 020498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning
5. TM 05538C-10/1A Operator's Manual, Rifle, 5.56mm, M16A2 w/Equipment
6. TM 08521A/09761a-23&p/2a Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
7. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
8. TM 08671A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 5.56mm, M249
9. TM 09134A-12&P/1 AT-4 tracer trainer
10. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
11. TM 9-1005-212-25/FM 23-65 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2
12. TM 9-1315-886-12/TO Operators and Unit Maintenance Manual for Launcher and Cartridge, 84 Millimeter: M136 (AT4)
13. TM 9-1340-214-10 OPERATORS MANUAL FOR 66 MM LIGHT ANTITANK WEAPON (LAW) SYSTEM
14. TM 9-1425-472-12 TOW 2 Weapon System Guided Missile System M220E4
15. TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-C2-7004

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

TANK-GNRY-5003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: The RAGTS and MAGTS configurations partially train this task but not to standard. Use simulation only as part of training continuum.

---

**1812-TRNG-2002:** Facilitate Simulation Training Program

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given higher headquarters intent, assessment of the unit, and unit training plan.

**STANDARD:** To achieve set standards through simulation prior to the use of actual vehicles, weapons, and ammunition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training hardware.
2. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training software.
3. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training scenarios.
4. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training facilities.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

TANK-GNRY-5003

---

**1812-TRNG-2003:** Manage the Unit Gunnery Training Program

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and its training plan.

**STANDARD:** To ensure all Marines are trained to standard on organic weapon systems.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assess the unit's proficiency.
2. Identify requirements for the unit gunnery training program.
3. Develop the unit gunnery training program.
4. Supervise implementation of the unit gunnery training program.
5. Evaluate the unit's gunnery proficiency.
6. Formulate a corrective action plan.
7. Implement a corrective action plan.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1\_ Range Safety
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
6. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. TC 25-8 Training Ranges

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

TANK-GNRY-5003

---

**1812-TRNG-2004:** Manage Ammunition Resources

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit training plan.

**STANDARD:** To ensure Marines are trained to standard within the units given allotment of ammunition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify unit ammunition requirements.
2. Forecast unit ammunition for the fiscal year.
3. Allocate unit ammunition according to training plans.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3570.1\_ Range Safety
2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
5. NAVMC 3500.121A Appendix C Tank Training & Readiness Manual
6. NAVMC 8011 Class V Material Allowance for Training, Programmed Testing, and Security

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

TANK-GNRY-5003

---

**1812-VOPS-2001:** Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, and all associated SL-3.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the operational readiness of the tank.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct vehicle inspection of tank unit.
2. Monitor the Maintenance Progress Report (MPR).
3. Supervise equipment maintenance.
4. Inspect completed maintenance work.
5. Maintain equipment records.

**REFERENCES:**

1. LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank
2. MCO 4400.16\_ Uniform Material Movement and Issue Priority System (UMMIPS)
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-

- Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit
  8. TM 10271A-OR/1C Operators Manual for Monocular Night Vision Device AN/PVS-14
  9. TM 11- OPERATOR'S MANUAL FOR AN/PVS-7B
  10. TM 11-5820-890-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
  11. TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)
  12. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
  13. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
  14. TM 9-1005-212-25/FM 23-65 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2
  15. TM 9-1005-313-23&P Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
  16. TM 9-2590-509-23&P Operator's Manual Mine Clearing Blade for M1A1 Tank
  17. UM 4400-124 FMF SASSY Using Unit Procedures

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-4009

TANK-VOPS-3002

---

**1812-VOPS-2002:** Supervise Tank Recovery Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a disabled tank capable of being towed.

**STANDARD:** Using self-recovery techniques.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Locate the disabled vehicle.
2. Establish local security.
3. Conduct estimate of the situation.
4. Prepare vehicle for towing as required.
5. Recover vehicle as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-CSS-5001

TANK-CSS-6001

TANK-CSS-7001

TANK-MANV-4009

---

**1812-VOPS-2003:** Direct Survivability and Fight Back Capabilities

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and crew.

**STANDARD:** To organize crew actions in the event of an emergency.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assess situation.
2. Direct appropriate course of action.
3. Perform destruction procedures as required.
4. Assemble and account for crew.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-4001	TANK-FPRO-4002	TANK-GNRY-3005
TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-VOPS-3004	

---

**1812-VOPS-2004:** Conduct Maintenance Management

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** To ensure operational readiness of the unit.



**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare assigned equipment for inspection.
2. Conduct inspection of assigned equipment.
3. Inspect preventative and corrective maintenance.
4. Supervise equipment maintenance.

**REFERENCES:**

1. LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank
2. MCO 4790.2 Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
3. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit
7. TM 11-5820-1172-13 Operator and Maintenance Manual, Defense Advanced GPS Receiver (DAGR) Satellite Signals Navigation Set AN/PSN-13
8. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
9. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
10. TM 11-5820-890-10-2 SINCGARS ICOM Ground Radio Operators Pocket Guide for Manpack
11. TM 11-5820-890-10-8 SINCGARS Radio Sets, Operators Manual
12. TM 11-5825-283-10 Operator's Manual for Manpack Radio Sets AN/ASQ-177C(V)4; AN/PSQ-6C; AN/VSQ-2C(V)1; AN/VSQ-2C(V)2; AN/VSQ-2C(V)4
13. TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)
14. TM 11-6665-251-10 Operator's Manual for the AN/VDR-2
15. TM 3-6665-307-10 Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Detector Kit
16. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual Machine Gun, Cal .50
17. TM 9-1005-249-10 M16A2 Operators Manual
18. UM 4400.125 GCSS-MC Users Manual

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-5003

TANK-MANV-4007

TANK-MANV-5023

---

**1812-VOPS-2006:** Tactically Employ the Mine Clearing Blade and Tracked Width Mine Plow

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank with Mine Clearing Blade and Tracked Width Mine Plow.

**STANDARD:** To provide mobility/counter-mobility and survivability.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct pre-operational checks.
2. Conduct terrain analysis.
3. Employ front end implements in support of offensive operations.
4. Employ front end implements in support of defensive operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5022                      TANK-MANV-5028

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**8007. 1000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**1812-CMDC-1001:** Communicate Using Visual Signals

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank/unit and associated SL-3.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver a tank/unit using non-verbal communication.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Communicate using hand and arm signals to control vehicles.
2. Communicate using flashlights to control vehicles.
3. Communicate using flags to control vehicles.
4. Identify standard flags, lights, and markers used to control armored vehicles.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-4002                      TANK-MANV-4012                      TANK-MANV-5002  
TANK-MANV-5003

---

**1812-GNRY-1001:** Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, all associated training devices and references.

**STANDARD:** To pass all tests in accordance with MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct Ammunition Identification.
2. Conduct Vehicle Identification.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M240 7.62mm machine gun.
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M48 .50 Cal machine gun.
5. Perform MRS update.
6. Reload 120mm main gun.
7. Conduct Crew Fire Evacuation Drill.
8. Evacuate an injured crewman.
9. Boresight M1A1 tank main gun.
10. Conduct firing circuit check on the M256 breechblock.
11. Perform Failure to Fire (Misfire) procedures on Abrams main gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: Boresight only.

---

**1812-GNRY-1003:** Perform Individual Actions to Unload Stuck Main Gun Round

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To return Main Gun back to operational status.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify stuck round.
2. Remove stuck round.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

---

**1812-GNRY-1004:** Unload Stuck Case Base from Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To return main gun to fully operational condition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify stuck case base.
2. Remove stuck case base.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

---

**1812-GNRY-1005:** Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun From Loader's Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Loader

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** Until the targets are suppressed, destroyed, or the order "Cease Fire" is given.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare loaders station.
2. Operate loaders machine gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

TANK-GNRY-5003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	100 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-1006:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So that center of impact of the last round fired is within .15 mils of the aiming point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Fire for confirmation with KE.
4. Record data.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for CE.
6. Conduct precision alignment of the GAS.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3002

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per tank
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	4 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-1007:** Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To destroy or neutralize a threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** 1812-GNRY-2007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

---

**1812-GNRY-1008:** Evacuate an Injured Crewman

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and all associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** To remove injured personnel from a tank without causing additional harm.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Initiate crew evacuation procedures.
2. Conduct crew evacuation procedures.
3. Adhere to all safety precautions.
4. Move to a safe location.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1812. See Appendix G for further detail.
  2. This event does not meet live-fire prerequisites.
- 

**1812-GNRY-1009:** Load the Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, all associated training devices, and a fire command.

**STANDARD:** 1 round in 7 seconds or less.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive fire command.
2. Select ammunition.
3. Load main gun.
4. Clear the path of recoil.
5. Ensure ammunition door is closed.
6. Arm Breech arming handle.
7. Announce "UP."

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005                      TANK-GNRY-3010                      TANK-GNRY-4003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**



**EQUIPMENT:** Sabot, HEAT, MPAT, Canister, MPHE (when available) or Dummy rounds.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1812. See Appendix G for further detail.
  2. This event does not meet live-fire prerequisites.
- 

**1812-TAC-1001:** Employ Terrain Driving Techniques

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Driver

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and an area suitable for mechanized operations.

**STANDARD:** To minimize vehicle signatures.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. While driving, search for covered and concealed routes and covered positions that can be utilized if the tank is engaged.
2. Maintain vehicle's position in formation while watching for visual signals.
3. Monitor the steer-to indicator, if the tank is equipped, and select the best tactical route.
4. Assist the gunner and tank commander by scanning for targets and sensing fired rounds during engagements.
5. Apply the military aspects of terrain: observation and fields of fire, avenue of approach, key terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment (OAKOC).

**REFERENCES:** ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-4001	TANK-FPRO-4002	TANK-GNRY-3010
TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4001	TANK-MANV-4002
TANK-MANV-4003	TANK-MANV-4004	TANK-MANV-4005
TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-MANV-4008
TANK-MANV-4011	TANK-MANV-4012	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SIMULATION:** If available, the Army's Common Driver Trainer (CDT) simulator may be used to accomplish this event. Suitability is (S/L), with eight (8) required hours.

---

**1812-VOPS-1001:** Troubleshoot Tank

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank with a malfunction and references.

**STANDARD:** To isolate and identify any malfunctions, correct if authorized, and report to organizational maintenance as necessary.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the symptom or malfunction.
2. Locate symptom or malfunction.
3. Conduct troubleshooting procedures.
4. Notify unit maintenance.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

TANK-MANV-4009

---

**1812-VOPS-1002:** Perform Individual Actions to Recover Tank

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a disabled tank requiring recovery.

**STANDARD:** To return the tank to the unit maintenance collection point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare disabled vehicle for recovery.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Use additional vehicles if required.
5. Tow disabled tank.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-CSS-4001                      TANK-MANV-4009

---

**1812-VOPS-1003:** Perform Individual Actions for Emergency Procedures on a Tank

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an emergency.

**STANDARD:** To prevent injury to personnel or further damage to equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Service air cleaner after CBRN attack.
2. Perform immediate action for loss of engine power.
3. Perform immediate action for loss of steering.
4. Perform immediate action for loss of service brakes.
5. Unlock stuck parking brake.
6. Open breechblock.
7. Close breechblock.
8. Perform immediate action for engine failure to shut down.
9. Perform immediate action for starter failure to disengage.
10. Perform bypass primary fuel filter.
11. Perform immediate action for vehicle master power failure to power down.
12. Decontaminate tank.
13. Verify operational readiness of fire control system following a nuclear explosion.
14. Disconnect fuel quick disconnect coupling.
15. Perform armor damage immediate action.
16. Use battle override.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-4001  
TANK-VOPS-3004

TANK-MANV-4007

TANK-MANV-4012

---

**1812-VOPS-1004:** Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, SL-3 and references.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the operational readiness of the tank.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the required PMCS interval.
2. Conduct PMCS.
3. Submit discrepancies list to unit maintenance.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DA-2404 Form DA-2404
2. LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

1812-VOPS-2001

1812-VOPS-2004

TANK-MANV-4009

---

**1812-VOPS-1005:** Prepare, Operate, and Secure Assigned Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, SL-3, and references.

**STANDARD:** To ensure operation of the tank.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare assigned station.
2. Operate assigned station.
3. Secure assigned station.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005	TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4003	TANK-VOPS-3004	

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1812. See Appendix G for further detail.

---

**1812-VOPS-1006:** Conduct Maintenance on Auxiliary Equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and all associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** To ensure operation of the tank.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Maintain Deep Water Fording Kit.
2. Maintain M51 Tank Protective Mask.
3. Maintain AN/PSN-13 DAGR.
4. Maintain Antenna, AS-1729/VRC.
5. Maintain Antenna, AS-2731/GRC.
6. Maintain Auxiliary Power Unit, external.
7. Maintain Radio System.
8. Maintain Drivers Vision Enhancer (DVE) AN/VAS-5A (V)4.
9. Maintain Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240.

10. Maintain Machine Gun, Caliber .50, M48.
11. Maintain Track Width Mine Plow.
12. Maintain Multi-Purpose Tank Blade.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
5. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
6. TM 11-5820-890-10-2 SINCGARS ICOM Ground Radio Operators Pocket Guide for Manpack
7. TM 11-5825-283-10 Operator's Manual for Manpack Radio Sets AN/ASQ-177C(V)4; AN/PSQ-6C; AN/VSQ-2C(V)1; AN/VSQ-2C(V)2; AN/VSQ-2C(V)4
8. TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)
9. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
10. TM 11-5985-262-14 Antenna AS 1729/VRC
11. TM 11-6665-251-10 Operator's Manual for the AN/VDR-2
12. TM 3-6665-307-10 Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Detector Kit
13. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
14. TM 9-1005-212-25/FM 23-65 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2
15. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual Machine Gun, Cal .50
16. TM 9-1005-249-10 M16A2 Operators Manual
17. TM 9-1005-313-23&P Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
18. TM 9-2590-509-23&P Operator's Manual Mine Clearing Blade for M1A1 Tank

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-FPRO-4001	TANK-FPRO-4002	TANK-GNRY-3003
TANK-GNRY-3004	TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-MANV-4012
TANK-VOPS-3002		

---

**1812-VOPS-1007:** Load Batteries Onto a Tank

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and all associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** Moving three (3) batteries from ground to the back deck without losing control in a time limit of 1 minute 50 seconds.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Grasp the battery.
2. Lift battery.
3. Place battery onto back of tank.

**REFERENCES:**

1. NAVMC 10245 Equipment Repair Order (ERO)
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operators Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1812. See Appendix G for further detail.

---

**1812-VOPS-1008:** Hook Up Disabled Vehicle for Tow

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a disabled tank requiring recovery and necessary equipment.

**STANDARD:** So that the tow bar is attached and ready for tow of disabled vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Lift tow bar.
2. Move tow bar to disabled tank.
3. Attach tow bar to disabled tank.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
5. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-4009

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1812. See Appendix G for further detail.

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

COLLECTIVE TRAINING TOW AND SCOUT PLATOONS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	9000	9-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	9001	9-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. . . . .	9002	9-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS FOR TOW PLATOON. . . . .	9003	9-3
TOW 5000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	9004	9-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS FOR SCOUT PLATOON. . . . .	9005	9-19
SCOUT 5000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	9006	9-20



TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

COLLECTIVE TRAINING TOW AND SCOUT PLATOONS

**9000. PURPOSE.** This chapter contains all platoon level TOW and Scout unit events (5000-Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to the platoon and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Additionally, unit training managers should reference NAVMC 3500.44\_ (Infantry T&R Manual) in order to identify all individual events specific to the infantry occupational specialty as referenced in this manual.

**9001. EVENT CODING**

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "SCT" or "TOW" indicating that the event is for the Scout or TOW unit organic to the tank battalion in the infantry occupational field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the platoon level are:

FPRO - Force Protection	LOG - Logistics
FPST - Fire Support	MANV - Maneuver
INT - Intelligence	REC - Reconnaissance

c. Field three - This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events.

**9002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.** Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

**9003. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS FOR TOW PLATOON**

Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
TOW-FPRO-5001		Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment (S/L)	9-3
TOW-FSPT-5001		Employ Fire Support Assets (S/L)	9-4
TOW-INT-5001		Occupy an Observation Post (S/L)	9-5
TOW-INT-5002		Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace	9-5
TOW-LOG-5001		Conduct Resupply Operations (S/L)	9-6
TOW-MANV-5001		React to Indirect Fire (S/L)	9-6
TOW-MANV-5002		React to an Air Attack (S/L)	9-7
TOW-MANV-5004		Conduct Convoy Security Operations (S/L)	9-8
TOW-MANV-5005		Occupy an Assembly Area (S/L)	9-9
TOW-MANV-5006		Conduct a Tactical Road March (S/L)	9-10
<b>TOW-MANV-5007</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct an Attack by Fire (S/L)</b>	9-10
TOW-MANV-5008		Conduct an Anti-Armor Ambush (S/L)	9-11
TOW-MANV-5009		Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)	9-12
TOW-MANV-5010		Conduct an Assault (S/L)	9-13
TOW-MANV-5012		Defend a Battle Position (S/L)	9-14
TOW-MANV-5013		Conduct Linkup (S/L)	9-15
TOW-MANV-5014		Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)	9-16
TOW-MANV-5015		Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)	9-16
TOW-MANV-5016		Conduct a Withdrawal (S/L)	9-17
<b>TOW-MANV-5018</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct a Screen (S/L)</b>	9-18
TOW-MANV-5019		Support a Guard (S/L)	9-19

**9004. TOW 5000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**TOW-FPRO-5001:** Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct reconnaissance, survey, and decontamination operations.
6. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-37.3 MTTP for CBRN Decontamination

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**TOW-FSPT-5001:** Employ Fire Support Assets (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct fire support planning.
2. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
3. Make contact with enemy forces.
4. Execute fire support plan.
5. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. JP 3-09.3 Close Air Support
2. MCRP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
3. MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
4. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y
Partial	S/L	SAVT	Team Hours	4	N

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Virtual Battlefield System 2 (VBS2), and the Combined Arms Network (CAN) can be used to train individual and collective fire support operations using simulation.

---

**TOW-INT-5001:** Occupy an Observation Post (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To observe and report all activity to higher.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Move by cover and concealed route to the vicinity of observation post.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of tentative observation post.
3. Occupy observation post.
4. Establish security.
5. Establish communications.
6. Report activity to higher.
7. Move observation post as required.
8. Execute evacuation plan as required.
9. Execute relief actions or break down observation post.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**TOW-INT-5002:** Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To analyze the adversary and environment in a specific geographic area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Define the battlespace environment.
2. Describe the battlespace effects.
3. Evaluate the adversary.
4. Determine adversary courses of action.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
3. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

---

**TOW-LOG-5001:** Conduct Resupply Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To replenish all classes of supply required to maintain combat power.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Submit logistics reports to higher headquarters.
2. Coordinate with company trains to conduct resupply.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Conduct resupply.
5. Process all EPWs and casualties as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
5. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

---

**TOW-MANV-5001:** React to Indirect Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy indirect fires on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy indirect fires.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct action drill, if moving, to avoid impact area.
4. Send report to higher headquarters.
5. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**TOW-MANV-5002:** React to an Air Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy air attacks on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy aircraft.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct action drill.
4. If not observed by enemy aircraft, vehicles seek cover and concealment with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
5. Engage aircraft with heavy volume of fires in the path of flight.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.

7. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
7. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**TOW-MANV-5004:** Conduct Convoy Security Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon and a convoy order.

**STANDARD:** To provide close in protection of a convoy while on the move.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Conduct movement along assigned route.
4. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
5. Conduct short halts as required.
6. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
7. Conduct immediate action drills as required.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
6. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

---

**TOW-MANV-5005:** Occupy an Assembly Area (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish screen line for quartering party and follow on forces.
2. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
3. Be prepared to provide an element for local security for the quartering party.
4. Once the assembly area is occupied and conditions are set, collapse screen line.
5. Occupy assembly area.
6. Conduct relief in place as necessary.
7. Set in battle positions.
8. Establish observation post.
9. Establish communication with higher and adjacent units.
10. Develop engagement area.
11. Complete platoon fire plan sketch.
12. Report established.
13. Camouflage positions.
14. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
15. Conduct continuing actions.
16. Prepare for follow-on missions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y



**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**TOW-MANV-5006:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To move along a designated route and arrange forces according to enemy situation and terrain.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine formation, movement technique, speed and dispersion.
3. Determine order of march.
4. Issue orders.
5. Conduct movement along assigned route.
6. Implement direct fire plan as required.
7. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
8. Conduct short halts as required.
9. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
10. Conduct battle drills as required.
11. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

---

**TOW-MANV-5007:** Conduct an Attack by Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To destroy, neutralize, suppress, or fix the enemy without closing while utilizing the standoff of the SABER missile system.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine location of attack by fire.
3. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
4. Integrate fires.
5. Occupy attack by fire location.
6. Control indirect fires.
7. Control direct fires.
8. Consolidate and reorganize.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4500 rounds per Platoon
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	1000 rounds per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	400 rounds per Platoon
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	192 rounds per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TOW-MANV-5008:** Conduct an Anti-Armor Ambush (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To destroy enemy forces using the long range fires and standoff provided by the Saber missile system.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Cross LD.
3. Establish ORP.
4. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
5. Conduct leader's recon of ambush site.
6. Post security at ambush site.
7. Load security element into ambush site.
8. Load support element into ambush site.
9. Load assault element into ambush site.
10. Integrate fires.
11. Initiate ambush.
12. Search kill zone.
13. Remove assault element from ambush site to ORP.
14. Remove support element from ambush site to ORP.
15. Remove security element from ambush site to ORP.
16. Employ fire support plan to isolate objective and mask departure.
17. Return to friendly lines.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	4500 rounds per Platoon
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	1000 rounds per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	400 rounds per Platoon
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	192 rounds per Platoon
WH05 Guided Missile, BTM-71E-1B (TOW Prac	26 missiles per Platoon

---

**TOW-MANV-5009:** Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To facilitate the movement of friendly forces by using long range fires.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
3. Determine location of support by fire.
4. Integrate fires in support of maneuver.

5. Occupy support by fire location.
6. Establish direct fire dominance.
7. Control direct fires.
8. Coordinate with supported unit.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Ctg, 5.56mm Ball M855 (Clip)	2500 rounds per Platoon
A064 Ctg, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M85	600 rounds per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 rounds per Platoon
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	96 rounds per Platoon
L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127	3 signals per Platoon
L314 Sig, Illum Green Star Cluster M125	3 signals per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**TOW-MANV-5010:** Conduct an Assault (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To destroy enemy forces, or to secure terrain.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Move to attack position.
3. Move to assault position.
4. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
5. Orient on the objective.
6. Assault the objective.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
8. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 rounds per Platoon
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	96 rounds per Platoon
G955 Gren, Hand Smoke Violet M18	2 grenades per Platoon
L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127	3 signals per Platoon
L314 Sig, Illum Green Star Cluster M125	3 signals per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TOW-MANV-5012:** Defend a Battle Position (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To deny enemy forces from specific terrain for a specific amount of time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Occupy hasty battle position.
3. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
4. Transition to a deliberate battle position (if situation permits).
5. Conduct continuing actions.
6. Defend against enemy attack.
7. Counterattack against enemy forces.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: Partial due to lack of SABR system.

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	400 rounds per Platoon
BA12 Ctg, 40mm Prac MK281 MOD 0 Linked	96 rounds per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TOW-MANV-5013:** Conduct Linkup (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To linkup with a friendly unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Coordinate with adjacent unit for linkup.
4. Move to contact point.
5. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal.
6. Stationary unit responds with far recognition signal.
7. Stationary unit initiates near recognition signal.
8. Moving unit responds with near recognition signal.
9. Coordinate follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-11.1 Infantry Company Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**TOW-MANV-5014:** Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct liaison with unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Moving unit maintains weapon system orientation towards last known enemy location and weapon status is hold until the vehicle has crossed friendly lines.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**TOW-MANV-5015:** Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of

- enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Conduct link-up procedures.
  3. Stationary unit employs UAS/reconnaissance assets.
  4. Moving unit maintains weapon system towards last known enemy location.
  5. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
  6. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.
  7. Moving unit reports completion upon reaching Battle Handover Line.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**TOW-MANV-5016:** Conduct a Withdrawal (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Break contact from enemy forces.
4. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
6. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**



<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

**TOW-MANV-5018:** Conduct a Screen (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To observe, identify, and report enemy actions to the protected force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Task-organize friendly forces.
3. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
4. Integrate fires.
5. Array forces.
6. Observe and identify enemy forces.
7. Send reports.
8. Engage enemy reconnaissance units, as required, without becoming decisively engaged.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	1200 rounds per Platoon
A080 Ctg, 5.56mm Blank M200	6800 rounds per Platoon
A598 Ctg, .50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked	1000 rounds per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**TOW-MANV-5019:** Support a Guard (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon in support of an armored unit.

**STANDARD:** To defeat, repel, or fix the lead elements of an enemy ground force in order to prevent them from engaging the protected unit with direct fires for a predetermined period of time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Task-organize friendly forces.
3. Employ UAS/Reconnaissance assets.
4. Integrate fires.
5. Array forces.
6. Observe and identify enemy forces.
7. Send reports.
8. Engage lead elements of an enemy ground force in order to prevent them from engaging the protected unit with direct fires.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**9005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS FOR SCOUT PLATOON**

Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
SCT-FPRO-5001		Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment (S/L)	9-20
SCT-FSPT-5001		Employ Fire Support Assets (S/L)	9-21

SCT-INT-5001		Occupy an Observation Post (S/L)	9-21
SCT-INT-5002		Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace	9-22
SCT-LOG-5001		Conduct Resupply Operations (S/L)	9-23
SCT-MANV-5001		React to Indirect Fire (S/L)	9-23
SCT-MANV-5002		React to an Air Attack (S/L)	9-24
SCT-MANV-5004		Conduct Convoy Security Operations (S/L)	9-25
SCT-MANV-5005		Occupy an Assembly Area (S/L)	9-25
SCT-MANV-5006		Conduct a Tactical Road March (S/L)	9-26
SCT-MANV-5007		Conduct a Patrol (L/S)	9-27
SCT-MANV-5008		Conduct Linkup (S/L)	9-28
SCT-MANV-5009		Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)	9-29
SCT-MANV-5010		Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)	9-29
SCT-MANV-5011		Conduct a Withdrawal (S/L)	9-30
SCT-MANV-5012	Yes	Conduct a Screen (S/L)	9-31
SCT-REC-5001	Yes	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (S/L)	9-32
SCT-REC-5002	Yes	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (S/L)	9-33
SCT-REC-5003	Yes	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (S/L)	9-33

#### 9006. SCOUT 5000-LEVEL EVENTS

**SCT-FPRO-5001:** Conduct Operations in a CBRN Environment (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct reconnaissance, survey, and decontamination operations.
6. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

---

**SCT-FSPT-5001:** Employ Fire Support Assets (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct fire support planning.
2. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
3. Make contact with enemy forces.
4. Execute fire support plan.
5. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. JP 3-09.3 Close Air Support
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y
Partial	S/L	SAVT	Team Hours	4	N

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

---

**SCT-INT-5001:** Occupy an Observation Post (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To observe and report all activity to higher.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Move by cover and concealed route to the vicinity of observation post.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of tentative observation post.
3. Occupy observation post.
4. Establish security.
5. Establish communications.
6. Report activity to higher.
7. Move observation post as required.
8. Execute evacuation plan as required.
9. Execute relief actions or de-establish observation post.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-INT-5002:** Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To analyze the adversary and environment in a specific geographic area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Define the battlespace environment.
2. Describe the battlespace effects.
3. Evaluate the adversary.
4. Determine adversary courses of action.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
  2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
  3. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
  4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
-

**SCT-LOG-5001:** Conduct Resupply Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To replenish all classes of supply in order to maintain combat power.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Submit logistics reports to higher headquarters.
2. Coordinate to conduct resupply.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Conduct resupply via appropriate method.
5. Process all EPWs and casualties as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
5. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5001:** React to Indirect Fire (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy indirect fires on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy indirect fires.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct action drill, if moving, to avoid impact area.

4. Send report to higher headquarters.
5. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5002:** React to an Air Attack (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy air attacks on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy aircraft.
2. Issue orders.
3. If not observed by enemy aircraft, vehicles seek cover and concealment with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
4. Engage aircraft with heavy volume of fires in the path of flight.
5. Send report to higher headquarters.
6. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
7. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5004:** Conduct Convoy Security Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon and a convoy order.

**STANDARD:** To provide close in protection of a convoy while on the move.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Conduct movement along assigned route.
4. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
5. Conduct short halts as required.
6. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
7. Conduct immediate action drills as required.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
6. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5005:** Occupy an Assembly Area (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**



MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Conduct reconnaissance.
3. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
4. Establish local security.
5. Coordinate with adjacent units.
6. Establish observation post.
7. Establish wire communications.
8. Prepare sketch cards and fire plans.
9. Camouflage positions.
10. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
11. Conduct continuing actions.
12. Prepare for follow-on missions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5006:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1

MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To move along a designated route and arrange forces according to enemy situation and terrain.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine formation, movement technique, speed and dispersion.
3. Determine order of march.
4. Issue orders.
5. Conduct movement along assigned route.
6. Implement direct fire plan.
7. Conduct movement along assigned route.
8. Conduct short halts as required.
9. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
10. Conduct battle drills as required.
11. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5007:** Conduct a Patrol (L/S)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To gather information and provide security while moving along a route.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Task-organize.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Coordinate logistics.
5. Depart friendly lines.
6. Conduct immediate actions as required.
7. Conduct information collection.
8. Send reports.
9. Consolidate as necessary.
10. Return to friendly lines.
11. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-11.1 Infantry Company Operations
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L/S	IIT	Squad Hours	8	Y
NOTES: Dismounted.					
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	N

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5008:** Conduct Linkup (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To linkup with a friendly unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Coordinate with adjacent unit for linkup.
4. Move to contact point.
5. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal.
6. Stationary unit responds with far recognition signal.
7. Stationary unit initiates near recognition signal.
8. Moving unit responds with near recognition signal.
9. Coordinate follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Infantry Company Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
------------------	--------------------	------------------	------------------------	--------------	-----------

Partial      S/L                      CCS                      Crew Hours                      1                      Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5009:**    Conduct a Relief in Place (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    12 months

**CONDITION:**    Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:**    To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct liaison with unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5010:**    Conduct a Passage of Lines (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1                      MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    12 months

**CONDITION:**    Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Conduct link-up procedures.
3. Stationary unit employs UAS/reconnaissance assets.
4. Moving unit maintains weapon system towards last known enemy location.
5. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
6. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.
7. Moving unit reports completion upon reaching Battle Handover Line.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	1	Y
NOTES: Dismounted.					
Partial	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	1	N

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-MANV-5011:** Conduct a Withdrawal (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Break contact from enemy forces.
4. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
6. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

---

**SCT-MANV-5012:** Conduct a Screen (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To observe, identify, and report enemy actions to the protected force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Task-organize friendly forces.
3. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
4. Integrate fires.
5. Array forces.
6. Observe and identify enemy forces.
7. Send reports.
8. Engage enemy reconnaissance units, as required, without becoming decisively engaged.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	4450 rounds per Platoon
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	300 rounds per Platoon
B542 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M430 / M430A1 Linked	5760 rounds per Platoon
B546 Ctg, 40mm HEDP M433 F/M203 Gren Laun	1080 rounds per Platoon
L312 Sig, Illum White Star Para M127	3 signals per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**SCT-REC-5001:** Conduct Area Reconnaissance (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon and reconnaissance guidance.

**STANDARD:** To gather information on terrain, threat, society, and infrastructure in a prescribed area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Maneuver assigned forces.
3. Determine reconnaissance technique.
4. Apply the appropriate form of reconnaissance.
5. Make contact through sensors and other ISR assets.
6. Develop the situation out of enemy contact.
7. Maneuver the force out of enemy contact.
8. Apply the engagement criteria.
9. Apply the reconnaissance fundamentals.
10. Send reports.
11. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-REC-5002:** Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon and recon guidance.

**STANDARD:** To gather information on terrain, threat, society, and infrastructure in a prescribed zone.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Maneuver assigned forces.
3. Determine reconnaissance technique.
4. Apply the appropriate form of reconnaissance.
5. Make contact through sensors and other ISR assets.
6. Develop the situation out of enemy contact.
7. Maneuver the force out of enemy contact.
8. Apply the engagement criteria.
9. Apply the reconnaissance fundamentals.
10. Send reports.
11. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**SCT-REC-5003:** Conduct Route Reconnaissance (S/L)



**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task-organized platoon and reconnaissance guidance.

**STANDARD:** To gather detailed information on terrain, threat, society, and infrastructure along a specific route or assigned axis.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Maneuver assigned forces.
3. Determine reconnaissance technique.
4. Apply the appropriate form of reconnaissance.
5. Make contact through sensors and other ISR assets.
6. Develop the situation out of enemy contact.
7. Maneuver the force out of enemy contact.
8. Apply the engagement criteria.
9. Apply the reconnaissance fundamentals.
10. Produce a route reconnaissance overlay.
11. Produce a route classification formula.
12. Send reports.
13. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	4	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX A

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

AAC	Armament Accuracy Checks
AGTS	Advanced Gunnery Training System
BDA	Battle Damage Assessment
BFT	Blue Force Tracker
C2	Command and Control
C4I	Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence
CACCTUS	Combined Arms Command and Control Trainer Upgrade System
CAG	Civil Affairs Group
CAST	Combined Arms Staff Trainer
CCIR	Commander's Critical Information Requirements
CCP	Casualty Collection point
CE	Command Element
CHOP	Change of Operational Control
COA	Course of Action
COC	Company Operations Center
COG	Centers of Gravity
COMSEC	Communications Security
CONOPS	Contingency Operations
CVC	Combat vehicle Crewman's Helmet
DoD	Department of Defense
DVE	Drivers Vision Enhancer
DVTE	Deployable Virtual Training Environment
ECM	Electronic Counter Measures
EMCON	Emissions Control
EMW	Expeditionary Maneuver Warfare
EP	Electronic Protection
ES	Electronic Support
FDC	Fire Direction Center
FM	Field Manual (Army)
FIST	Fire Support Team
FRAGO	Fragmentary Order
GCE	Ground Combat Element
GST	Gunnery Skills Test
HBCT	Heavy Brigade Combat Team
IPB	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace
ISMT	Indoor Simulated Marksmanship Trainer
LZ	Landing Zone
MAGTF	Marine Air-Ground Task Force
MCDP	Marine Corps Doctrinal Publication
MCM	Mine Counter Measure Platoon
MCP	Marine Corps Planning Process
MCRP	Marine Corps Reference Publication
MCWP	Marine Corps Warfighting Publication
MEF	Marine Expeditionary Force
METT-T	Mission, Enemy, Terrain and Weather, Troops and Support Available-Time Available
MOJT	Managed on the Job Training
MPF	Maritime Pre-positioning Force
MRS	Muzzle Reference System

MSPS . . . . . MOS-Specific Physical Standard  
MTWS . . . . . MAGTF Tactical Warfare Simulation  
NVD . . . . . Night Vision Device  
NVG . . . . . Night Vision Goggle  
OPORD . . . . . Operation Order  
OPSEC . . . . . Operations Security  
OCD . . . . . Obstacle Clearing Detachment  
PMCS . . . . . Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services  
ROC-V . . . . . Recognition of Vehicles  
SAVT . . . . . Supporting Arms Virtual Trainer  
TCGST . . . . . Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test  
UHF . . . . . Ultra High Frequency  
VBS2 . . . . . Virtual Battlefield System 2  
VHF . . . . . Very High Frequency

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX B

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Publication 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.

A

**After Action Review.** A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

**Assessment.** An informal judgment of the unit's proficiency and resources made by a commander or trainer to gain insight into the unit's overall condition. It serves as the basis for the midrange plan. Commanders make frequent use of these determinations during the course of the combat readiness cycle in order to adjust, prioritize or modify training events and plans.

C

**Chaining.** A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-Level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-Level. When a higher level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

**Collective Event.** A clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (i.e., task) that requires organized team or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission or function. A collective task is derived from unit missions or higher-level collective tasks. Task accomplishment requires performance of procedures composed of supporting collective or individual tasks. A collective task describes the exact performance a group must perform in the field under actual operational conditions. The term "collective" does not necessarily infer that a unit accomplishes the event. A unit, such as a squad or platoon conducting an attack; may accomplish a collective event or, it may be accomplished by an individual to accomplish a unit mission, such as a battalion supply officer completing a reconciliation of the battalion's CMR. Thus, many collective events will have titles that are the same as individual events; however, the standard and condition will be different because the scope of the collective event is broader.

**Collective Training Standards (CTS).** Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support, and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. CTS are found within collective training events in T&R Manuals.

**Combat Readiness Cycle.** The combat readiness cycle depicts the relationships within the building block approach to training. The combat readiness cycle progresses from T&R Manual individual core skills training, to the accomplishment of collective training events, and finally, to a unit's participation in a contingency or actual combat. The combat readiness cycle demonstrates the relationship of core capabilities to unit combat readiness. Individual core skills training and the training of collective events lead to unit proficiency and the ability to accomplish the unit's stated mission.

**Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP).** The CRP is a quantitative numerical value used in calculating collective training readiness based on the E-Coded events that support the unit METL. CRP is a concise measure of unit training accomplishments. This numerical value is only a snapshot of training readiness at a specific time. As training is conducted, unit CRP will continuously change.

**Condition.** The condition describes the training situation or environment under which the training event or task will take place. Expands on the information in the title by identifying when, where and why the event or task will occur and what materials, personnel, equipment, environmental provisions, and safety constraints must be present to perform the event or task in a real-world environment. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.).

**Core Competency.** Core competency is the comprehensive measure of a unit's ability to accomplish its assigned MET. It serves as the foundation of the T&R Program. Core competencies are those unit core capabilities and individual core skills that support the commander's METL and T/O mission statement. Individual competency is exhibited through demonstration of proficiency in specified core tasks and core plus tasks. Unit proficiency is measured through collective tasks.

**Core Capabilities.** Core capabilities are the essential functions a unit must be capable of performing during extended contingency/combat operations. Core unit capabilities are based upon mission essential tasks derived from operational plans; doctrine and established tactics; techniques and procedures.

**Core Plus Capabilities.** Core plus capabilities are advanced capabilities that are environment, mission, or theater specific. Core plus capabilities may entail high-risk, high-cost training for missions that are less likely to be assigned in combat.

**Core Plus Skills.** Core plus skills are those advanced skills that are environment, mission, rank, or billet specific. 2000-Level training is designed to make Marines proficient in core skills in a specific billet or at a specified rank at the Combat Ready level. 3000-8000-Level training produces combat leaders and fully qualified section members at the Combat Qualified level. Marines trained at the Combat Qualified level are those the

commanding officer feels are capable of accomplishing unit-level missions and of directing the actions of subordinates. Many core plus tasks are learned via MOJT, while others form the base for curriculum in career level MOS courses taught by the formal school.

#### D

**Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS).** A comprehensive readiness reporting system that evaluates readiness on the basis of the actual missions and capabilities assigned to the forces. It is a capabilities-based, adaptive, near real-time reporting system for the entire Department of Defense.

**Deferred Event.** A T&R event that a commanding officer may postpone when in his or her judgment, a lack of logistic support, ammo, ranges, or other training assets requires a temporary exemption. CRP cannot be accrued for deferred "E-Coded" events.

**Delinquent Event.** An event becomes delinquent when a unit exceeds the sustainment interval for that particular event. The individual or unit must update the delinquent event by first performing all prerequisite events. When the unit commander deems that performing all prerequisite is unattainable, then the delinquent event will be re-demonstrated under the supervision of the appropriate evaluation authority.

#### E

**Evaluation.** Evaluation is a continuous process that occurs at all echelons, during every phase of training and can be both formal and informal. Evaluations ensure that Marines and units are capable of conducting their combat mission. Evaluation results are used to reallocate resources, reprioritize the training plan, and plan for future training.

**E-Coded Event.** An "E-Coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted collective skill that contributes to the unit's ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-Coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

**Event Component.** The major procedures (i.e., actions) that must occur to perform a Collective Event to standard.

**Event (Training).** 1) An event is a significant training occurrence that is identified, expanded and used as a building block and potential milestone for a unit's training. An event may include formal evaluations. 2) An event within the T&R Program can be an individual training evolution, a collective training evolution or both. Through T&R events, the unit commander ensures that individual Marines and the unit progress from a combat capable status to a Fully Combat Qualified (FCQ) status.

**Exercise Commander (EC).** The Commanding General, Marine Expeditionary Force or his appointee will fill this role, unless authority is delegated to the respective commander of the Division, Wing, or FSSG. Responsibilities and functions of the EC include: 1) designate unit(s) to be evaluated, 2) may designate an exercise director, 3) prescribe exercise objectives and T&R events to be evaluated, 4) coordinate with commands or agencies external to the Marine Corps and adjacent Marine Corps commands, when required.

**Exercise Director (ED).** Designated by the EC to prepare, conduct, and report all evaluation results. Responsibilities and functions of the ED include: 1) Publish a letter of instruction (LOI) that: delineates the T&R events to be evaluated, establishes timeframe of the exercise, lists responsibilities of various elements participating in the exercise, establishes safety requirements/guidelines, and lists coordinating instructions. 2) Designate the TEC and TECG to operate as the central control agency for the exercise. 3) Assign evaluators, to include the senior evaluator, and ensure that those evaluators are properly trained. 4) Develop the general exercise scenario taking into account any objectives/events prescribed by the EC. 5) Arrange for all resources to include: training areas, airspace, aggressor forces, and other required support.

**M**

**Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness (T&R) Program.** The T&R Program is the Marine Corps' primary tool for planning and conducting training, for planning and conducting training evaluation, and for assessing training readiness. The program will provide the commander with standardized programs of instruction for units within the ground combat, combat support, and combat service support communities. It consolidates the ITS, CTS, METL and other individual and unit training management tools. T&R is a program of standards that systematizes commonly accepted skills, is open to innovative change, and above all, tailors the training effort to the unit's mission. Further, T&R serves as a training guide and provides commanders an immediate assessment of unit combat readiness by assigning a CRP to key training events. In short, the T&R Program is a building block approach to training that maximizes flexibility and produces the best-trained Marines possible.

**Mission Essential Task(s) MET(s).** A MET is a collective task in which an organization must be proficient in order to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime mission(s). MET listings are the foundation for the T&R Manual; all events in the T&R Manual support a MET.

**Mission Essential Task List (METL).** Descriptive training document that provides units a clear, war fighting focused description of collective actions necessary to achieve wartime mission proficiency. The service-level METL, that which is used as the foundation of the T&R Manual, is developed using Marine Corps doctrine, operational plans, T/Os, UJTL, UNTL, and MCTL. For community based T&R Manuals, an occupational field METL is developed to focus the community's collective training standards. Commanders develop their unit METL from the service-level METL, operational plans, contingency plans, and SOPs.

**O**

**Operational Readiness (DOD, NATO).** OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

**P**

**Performance Step.** Performance steps are included in the components of an Individual T&R Event. They are the major procedures (i.e., actions) a Marine unit must accomplish to perform an individual event to standard. They describe the procedure the task performer must take to perform the task under

operational conditions and provide sufficient information for a task performer to perform the procedure (may necessitate identification of supporting steps, procedures, or actions in outline form). Performance steps follow a logical progression and should be followed sequentially, unless otherwise stated. Normally, performance steps are listed only for 1000-level individual events (those that are taught in the entry-level MOS school).

**Prerequisite Event.** Prerequisites are the academic training and/or T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the event.

## R

**Readiness (DOD).** Readiness is the ability of U.S. military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

## S

**Section Skill Tasks.** Section skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

**Simulation Training.** Simulators provide the additional capability to develop and hone core and core plus skills. Accordingly, the development of simulator training events for appropriate T&R syllabi can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time and cost. Therefore, in cases where simulator fidelity and capabilities are such that simulator training closely matches that of actual training events, T&R Manual developers may include the option of using simulators to accomplish the training. CRP credit will be earned for E-Coded simulator events based on assessment of relative training event performance.

**Standard.** A standard is a statement that establishes criteria for how well a task or learning objective must be performed. The standard specifies how well, completely, or accurately a process must be performed or product produced. For higher-level collective events, it describes why the event is being done and the desired end-state of the event. Standards become more specific for lower-level events and outline the accuracy, time limits, sequencing, quality, product, process, restrictions, etc., that indicate the minimum acceptable level of performance required of the event. At a minimum, both collective and individual training standards consist of a task, the condition under which the task is to be performed, and the evaluation criteria that will be used to verify that the task has been performed to a satisfactory level.

**Sustainment Training.** Periodic retraining or demonstration of an event required maintaining the minimum acceptable level of proficiency or capability required to accomplish a training objective. Sustainment training goes beyond the entry-level and is designed to maintain or further develop proficiency in a given set of skills.



**Systems Approach to Training (SAT).** An orderly process for analyzing, designing, developing, implementing, and evaluating a unit's training program to ensure the unit, and the Marines of that unit acquire the knowledge and skills essential for the successful conduct of the unit's wartime missions.

## T

**Tactical Exercise Control Group (TECG).** A TECG is formed to provide subject matter experts in the functional areas being evaluated. The benefit of establishing a permanent TECG is to have resident, dedicated evaluation authority experience, and knowledgeable in evaluation technique. The responsibilities and functions of the TECG include: 1) developing a detailed exercise scenario to include the objectives and events prescribed by the EC/ED in the exercise LOI; 2) conducting detailed evaluator training prior to the exercise; 3) coordinating and controlling role players and aggressors; 4) compiling the evaluation data submitted by the evaluators and submitting required results to the ED; 5) preparing and conducting a detailed exercise debrief for the evaluated unit(s).

**Technical Exercise Controller (TEC).** The TEC is appointed by the ED, and usually comes from his staff or a subordinate command. The TEC is the senior evaluator within the TECG and should be of equal or higher grade than the commander(s) of the unit(s) being evaluated. The TEC is responsible for ensuring that the evaluation is conducted following the instructions contained in this order and MCO 1553.3A. Specific T&R Manuals are used as the source for evaluation criteria.

**Training Plan.** Training document that outlines the general plan for the conduct of individual and collective training in an organization for specified periods of time.

**Training Task.** This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

## U

**Unit CRP.** Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-Coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

**Unit Evaluation.** All units in the Marine Corps must be evaluated, either formally or informally, to ensure they are capable of conducting their combat mission. Informal evaluations should take place during all training events. The timing of formal evaluations is critical and should, when appropriate, be directly related to the units' operational deployment cycle. Formal evaluations should take place after the unit has been staffed with the majority of its personnel, has had sufficient time to train to individual and collective standards, and early enough in the training cycle so there is sufficient time to correctly identified weaknesses prior to deployment. All combat units and units' task organized for combat require formal evaluations prior to operational deployments.

**Unit Training Management (UTM).** Unit training management is the use of the SAT and Marine Corps training principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit on its wartime

mission. UTM governs the major peacetime training activity of the Marine Corps and applies to all echelons of the Total Force.

**W**

**Waived Event.** An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX C

CLASS V(W) REQUIREMENTS

Ammunition totals were calculated based on 100% of Table of Organization for individual training events and 100% of Table of Equipment for collective training events. The below charts depicts the total annual ammunition requirement for a tank battalion and its personnel to train to standard on every separate task in this T&R Manual. It is possible to train several tasks in a single evolution. For example: If a tank battalion conducts an attack (TANK-MANV-7003), then the subordinate tank companies, at the discretion of the commander, have also conducted an attack (TANK-MANV-6003). Conversely, if all the tank companies in a battalion have successfully conducted an attack, the battalion commander has the discretion to certify that the tank battalion has successfully trained to standard in conducting an attack. It will be possible to train a tank battalion to standard on certain tasks with less ammunition than is listed below.

DODIC	DESCRIPTION	1ST	2ND	4TH	TOTAL
AA38	CTG,CAL .50 SLAP-T SNGL RD	3,168	1,632	2,984	7,784
A059	CTG,5.56MM BALL CLPD	127,100	67,800	127,100	322,000
A063	CTG,5.56MM TR M856 SNGL RD	29,080	17,040	29,080	75,200
A064	CTG,5.56MM 4 BALL M855/1 TR	40,100	27,500	40,100	107,700
A075	CTG,5.56MM BLANK LNKD	9,200	8,000	9,200	26,400
A080	CTG,5.56MM BLANK	22,800	16,000	22,800	61,600
A111	CTG,7.62MM BLNK LNKD	10,600	5,400	15,800	31,800
A131	CTG,7.62MM 4 BALL/ 1 TRACER	518,950	312,200	488,350	1,319,500
A576	CTG,CAL.50 API M8/API-T M20	219,800	140,100	224,100	584,000
A598	CTG,.50 BLANK M1A1 LNKD	6,300	2,700	8,900	17,900
BA12	CTG,40MM TP MK281-0	4,172	2,100	4,172	10,444
B519	CTG,40MM TP M781 SNGL RD	600	400	600	1,600
B535	CTG,40MM ILLUM WHT STAR PARA	150	90	150	390
B542	CTG, 40MM M430 & A1 Linked	5760	5760	5760	17,280
B546	CTG, 40MM HEDP M433	1080	1080	1080	3,240
CA31	CTG,120MM TPMP-T M1002	3,892	2,276	2,780	8,948
CA38	CTG,120MM CANISTER M1028	379	247	367	993
C785	CTG,120MM TPCSDS-T M865	6,692	3,772	5,508	15,972
G995	CTG&LAUNCHER, 84MM M136 AT-4	18	18	18	54
G924	GRENADE,HAND RIOT CS XM47E3/M47	60	40	60	160
G940	GRENADE,HAND SMK GRN M18	60	40	60	160
G945	GRENADE,HAND SMK YLW M18 (1330)	60	40	60	160
G955	GRENADE,HAND SMK VIO M18	62	40	62	164

G826	GRENADE, LNCHR SMK RP SCREEN UK 8A1/L8A3	768	384	768	1,920
G982	GRENADE, HAND PRAC SMK TA XM/M83	60	40	60	160
L305	SIGNAL, ILLUMGRNSTARPARA 19A1/A2	60	40	60	160
L307	SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR CLSTRM18A1	60	40	60	160
L312	SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR PARA M127/A1	69	40	69	178
L314	SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR CLSTR M125/A1/E1	66	40	66	172
L594	SIMULATOR, PROJECTILE GROUND BURST M115A2	75	45	75	195
WH05	TOW-2A, BTM-71E-1B	78	52	78	208

The table below represents the ideal ammunition allocation to conduct an active and reserve tank battalion's annual field exercise.

BATTALION FIELD EXERCISE			
Weapon	DODIC	NOMENCLATURE	Quantity
M4/M16A4	A059	CTG, 5.56MM BALL	20,000
	A063	CTG, 5.56MM TRACER	5,000
M249	A064	CTG, 5.56MM 4&1 LNKD	17,500
M240	A131	CTG, 7.62MM 4&1 LNKD	100,000
M2/M48	A576	CTG, CAL 50 4&1 LNKD	60,000
M203	B519	CTG, 40MM TP M781 SNGL RD	200
	B535	CTG, 40MM ILLUM WHT STAR PARA XM 583/E1 SNGL RD	30
MK19	BA12	CTG, 40MM TP MK281-0 (LOW COST TRAINING CTG)	700
	B542	CTG, 40MM M430 & A1 Linked	5,760
	B546	CTG, 40MM HEDP M433	1,080
120MM	CA31	CTG, 120MM TPMP-T M1002	228
	CA38	CTG, 120MM CANISTER M1028	40
	C785	CTG, 120MM TPCSDS-T M865	222
TOW	WH05	TOW2A INERT	52
HAND SMOKE	G940/GRN	GRENADE, HAND SMK GRN M18	20
	G945/YLW	GRENADE, HAND SMK YLW M18	20
	G955/VIO	GRENADE, HAND SMK VIO M18	20
	G982/PRAC	GRENADE, HAND PRAC SMK TA XM/M83	20
CS GRENADE	G924/RIOT	GRENADE, HAND RIOT CS XM47E3/M47	20
WHITE PARA	L312	SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR PARA M127/A1	20
WHITE	L307	SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR CLSTR M18A1	20

CLSTR			
GREEN PARA	L305	SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A2	20
GREEN CLSTR	L314	SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN CLSTR M125/A1/E1	20
ARTY SIM	L594	L594 SIMULATOR, PROJ GND BURST M115A2 15 rounds per Battalion	15
AT-4	C995	CTG, & LAUNCHER, 84MM M136 AT-4	18

The table below represents the ideal ammunition allocation to conduct a tank company's annual field exercise (1st Tank Bn X4 Companies, 2d Tank Bn X2 Companies, 4th Tank Bn has 6 Companies but will use 4 for ammo).

COMPANY FIELD EXERCISE			
Weapon	DODIC	NOMENCLATURE	Quantity
M4/M16A4	A059	CTG, 5.56MM BALL	20,000
	A063	CTG, 5.56MM TRACER	5,000
M249	A064	CTG, 5.56MM 4&1 LNKD	5,000
M240	A131	CTG, 7.62MM 4&1 LNKD	17,000
M2/M48	A576	CTG, CAL 50 4&1 LNKD	12,000
M203	B519	CTG, 40MM TP M781 SNGL RD	100
	B535	CTG, 40MM ILLUM WHT STAR PARA XM 583/E1 SNGL RD	30
MK19	BA12	CTG, 40MM TP MK281-0 (LOW COST TRAINING CTG)	700
120mm	CA38	CTG, 120MM CANISTER M1028	28
	C785	CTG, 120MM TPCSDS-T M865	251
HAND SMOKE	G940	GRENADE, HAND SMK GRN M18 (GRN)	10
	G945	GRENADE, HAND SMK YLW M18 (YLW)	10
	G955	GRENADE, HAND SMK VIO M18 (VIO)	10
	G982	GRENADE, HAND PRAC SMK TA XM/M83 (PRAC)	10
CS GRENADE	G924	GRENADE, HAND RIOT CS XM47E3/M47 (RIOT)	10
WHITE PARA	L312	SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR PARA M127/A1	10
WHITE CLSTR	L307	SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR CLSTR M18A1	10
GREEN PARA	L305	SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A2	10
GREEN CLSTR	L314	SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN CLSTR M125/A1/E1	10
ARTY SIM	L594	SIMULATOR, PROJ GND BURST M115A2	15

The table below represents the ideal ammunition allocation to conduct a Tank Platoon Annual Field Exercise (1st Tank Bn X4 Companies, 2d Tank Bn X2 Companies, 4th Tank Bn has 6 Companies but will use 4 for ammo).

PLATOON FIELD EXERCISE			
Weapon	DODIC	NOMENCLATURE	Quantity
M4/M16A4	A059	CTG, 5.56MM BALL	1,300
	A063	CTG, 5.56MM TRACER	340
	A080	CTG, 5.56MM BLANK SNGL	16,000
	A075	CTG, 5.56MM BLANK LNKD	8,000
M240	A131	CTG, 7.62MM 4&1 LNKD	3,250
M2/M48	A576	CTG, CAL 50 4&1 LNKD	1,800
120MM	C785	CTG, 120MM TPCSDS-T M865	33
CS GRENADE	G826	GRENADE, LAUNCHER SMOKE RP SCREEN UK L8A1/L8A3	64

The table below represents the ideal ammunition allocation to conduct an annual field exercise for TOWs and Scouts.

TOWS & SCOUTS FIELD EXERCISE			
Weapon	DODIC	NOMENCLATURE	Quantity
M4/M16A4	A059	CTG, 5.56MM BALL	11,500
M249	A064	CTG, 5.56MM 4&1 LNKD	2,600
M4/M16A4	A075	CTG, 5.56MM BLANK LNKD	1,200
M4/M16A4	A080	CTG, 5.56MM BLANK	6,800
M2	A598	CTG, .50 BLANK M1A1 LNKD	1,000
M240	A131	CTG, 7.62MM 4&1 LNKD	4,450
M2	A576	CTG, CAL 50 4&1 LNKD	1,900
MK19	BA12	CTG, 40MM TP MK281-0	672
HAND SMOKE	G955	GRENADE, HAND SMK VIO M18 (VIO)	2
WHITE PARA	L312	SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR PARA M127/A1	9
GREEN CLSTR	L314	SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN CLSTR M125	6
TOW	WH05	TOW2A INERT	26

TANK GUNNERY AMMO REQUIREMENTS								
TANK TABLE	A131	A576	CA31	C785	CA38	AA38	A598	A111
TT II								
TT III	550	100	7	8		16		
TT IV	450	100	3	6	1			
TT V	550	50	5	8	1			
TT VI	450	100	9	8				
ZERO	100	100	4	4		4		
TOTAL:	2,100	450	28	34	2	20		

<b>Active Duty 1st Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (58 Crews)***</b>	121,800	26,100	1,624	1,972	116	1160		
<b>Active Duty 2d Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (30 Crews)***</b>	63,000	13,500	840	1,020	60	600		
<b>Reserve 4th Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (86 Crews)^^^</b>	180,600	38,700	2,408	2,924	172	1720		
***Active Duty Tank Gunnery Requirements for Tank Tables II-VI (1st & 2d Tank Battalion qualify semi-annually) ^^Reserve Tank Gunnery Requirements for Tank Tables II-VI (4th Tank Battalion qualifies annually)								
<b>TT VII-IX (Sect)</b>	900	500		14	1	16	100	200
<b>Active Duty 1st Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (29 Sections)</b>	26,100	14,500		406	29	464	2,900	5,800
<b>Active Duty 2d Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (15 Sections)</b>	13,500	7,500		210	15	240	1,500	3,000
<b>Reserve 4th Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (43 Sections)</b>	38,700	21,500		602	43	688	4,300	8,600
<b>TT X-XII (Plt)</b>	3,200	1,800	8	20		32	200	400
<b>Active Duty 1st Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (12 Platoons)</b>	38,400	21,600	96	240		384	2,400	4,800
<b>Active Duty 2d Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (6 Platoons)</b>	19,200	10,800	48	120		192	1,200	2,400
<b>Reserve 4th Tank Bn Annual TOTAL: (18 Platoons)</b>	57,600	32,400	144	360		576	3,600	7,200

MEU Platoon (X2)			160	240	8			
	A131	A576	CA31	C785	CA38	AA38	A598	A111
1st Tank Bn Total:	308,100	88,300	3,664	5,070	277	3,168	5,300	10,600
2d Tank Bn Total:	158,700	45,300	2,048	2,850	151	1,632	2,700	5,400
Active Total:	466,800	133,400	57,12	7,920	428	4,800	8,000	16,000
Reserve Total:	276,900	92,600	2,552	3,886	215	2,984	7,900	15,800
Combined TOTAL:	743,700	226,000	8,264	11,806	643	7,784	15,900	31,800



## TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

### APPENDIX D

#### SIMULATION

Listed in this appendix are applicable simulators/simulations available to improve training for both individual Marines and unit training. Simulators and simulations provide the capability to develop and hone core and core plus competencies and capabilities. Accordingly, the use of training modeling and simulation systems for appropriate T&R events can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time, cost, and risk. For more information regarding training Modeling & Simulation (M&S) Systems, review website: <https://ehqmc.usmc.mil/org/mccdc/TECOM/directorates/MTSB/Internal/default.aspx>

1. Supporting Arms Virtual Trainer (SAVT) is a fixed-site, partial dome (260 X 60 degree), virtual, immersive training environment for Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTACs), Forward Air Controllers (FACs), and Joint Forward Observers (JFOs). SAVT provides a "hands-on," immersive, mission-based, combined arms training environment. Personnel shall use training scenarios that require placement of tactical ordnance on selected targets using Joint Close Air Support (JCAS) procedures and observed fire procedures for Naval Surface Fire Support (NSFS), Artillery and Mortar fire. SAVT will provide a briefing and after action room for a group of students to monitor, review mission-based training events, and conduct after-action discussions. SAVT trains Marines to approved standards of training and readiness (T&R) tasks.

2. Indoor Simulated Marksmanship Trainer (ISMT) is an interactive three dimensional audio/video weapons simulator that provides enhanced small arms training in marksmanship, weapons employment, indirect fire, and tactical decision-making for Marines. The ISMT simulates range firing for basic infantry weapons, tactical employment training, call for fire, and shoot/no shoots decision-making drills. The ISMT can be utilized to train individuals, fire teams, and squads effectively and efficiently to the approved standards of combat skills and readiness.

3. Combat Convoy Simulator (CCS) is an interactive immersive training environment for convoy operations during combat, focusing on command and control. Other training capabilities include call for fire, call for close air support, mounted patrols, logistics support, high target extraction, MEDEVAC, and procedures for use of weapons in compliance with rules of engagement (ROE) and local TTPs. A single CCS suite of six vehicles provides for individual, crew, and platoon level training (up to 30 Marines at a time). The CCS trains Marines to approved standards of combat skills and readiness.

4. Deployable Virtual Training Environment (DVTE) is a deployable laptop PC based simulation system capable of emulating organic and supporting Infantry Battalion weapons systems and training scenarios to facilitate T&R based training. DVTE provides each installation and deployed Marine Forces with MAGTF (MEU level) Staff training, individual and collective skills sustainment, rapid planning, and almost spontaneous mission rehearsal capability. DVTE increases training of individual and unit core skills enhancing a rapid, innovative and interactive small-unit leader decision

making, and increased combined arms Training and pre-certification capability. The following is a list of the DVTE training applications/capabilities:

a. Virtual Battlespace 2 (VBS2) is an interactive, three-dimensional synthetic environment in which small unit tactics may be practiced among team members. Photo-realistic terrain, user created mission scenarios, and variable environmental conditions enhance the team training experience. Mission planning and mission rehearsal can be executed from squad to platoon level. VBS2 can be used to support Fire Support Training, convoy operations and tactical guided discussions.

b. Recognition of Combatants (ROC) a series consisting of applications covering Improvised Explosive Device (ROC-IED), Suicide Bomber (ROC-SB), Vehicle (ROC-V), and Aerial (ROC-Aerial) are self-paced computer based training tools designed to improve awareness and recognition of various combatant capabilities and functional considerations.

c. Operational and Tactical Language and Cultural Training System (OTCLTS) is a self-paced language and cultural training application that allows the user to learn Iraqi Arabic, Indonesian, Pashto, Dari, and French languages along with cultural considerations.

d. Forward Observer PC Simulator (FOPCSIM) is an individual Fires trainer which provides training on the basic concepts of fire support. FOPCSIM is a procedural trainer for artillery and mortar Call for Fire. FOPCSIM is also the forward observer component of the Deployable Virtual Training Environment (DVTE) Combined Arms Network (CAN) that provides a training tool for integration of artillery and close air support with maneuver forces.

e. Combined Arms Planning Tool (CAPT) is a standalone tool that can be used to enter and test all elements of your fire support plan. Doctrinal rules have been incorporated into the program, so that once the fire support plan is entered, CAPT runs a "rules based" test on the plan to identify potential trouble areas.

f. Combined Arms Network (CAN) is a computer based training tool that provides standard based training for individual Forward Observers, Forward Air Controllers and Joint Terminal Attack Controllers (JTAC) as well as team training for company fire support teams (FiST). CAN currently supports JTAC/JFO certification training under the TACP T&R Manual.

5. The MAGTF Tactical Warfare Simulation (MTWS) is a simulation program which uses constructive input to train battle staffs from Battalion through MEF, Marine Forces Reserve (MARFORRES) and internal MEF components i.e., Ground Combat Element, Aircraft Combat Element, and Combat Service Support Element. The primary mission of MTWS is two-fold: to provide a realistic combat environment for commanders and their staffs to refine their decision-making skills and to assist in the Command and Control (C2) aspects of tactical field exercises. The system is designed to provide realistic representation of forces from any military organization, a method for defining any existing or new weapons systems is provided via a flexible user defined parametric database. It provides military personnel with the opportunity to experience and acquire skill in combat operations without the expense and risk of taking real troops to the field.

6. Combined Arms Command and Control Trainer Upgrade System (CACCTUS) provides an institutional means to effectively train Marine staffs and units in all aspects of effectively integrating combined arms assets. The CACCTUS capability provides the full range of combined arms staff training and provides state of the art modeling and simulation networking technology to provide realistic Combined Arms Fire Support for the Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF). The high resolution combat simulation provides the ability to provide ground truth in the exercise, stimulate organic C2 Systems, visually display the impact of supporting arms fires and realistically portray the coordinated actions of friendly forces and the action/reaction of the enemy maneuver forces. The automated communication system replicates tactical communication nets required for command and control of exercising units allowing the training audience to communicate normal warfighting communications and process orders and other information/questions to response cell controllers. CACCTUS provides an automated after action review capability for live and simulated training thereby allowing the Marine Corps to meet its service training requirements.

6. For more information on current simulations, contact your local Simulation Centers. The following is the contact information:

a. Battle Simulation Centers (Scheduling Office)

(1) I MEF: (760) 725-2385

(2) II MEF: (910) 451-5435

(3) III MEF:

- MCB Camp Butler: 011-81-611-722-7219/ DSN 315 622-7219/7516
- MCB Hawaii: Simulators & Trainers must be scheduled via RFMSS. 3MAR Simulations Center: (808) 257-2440/ DSN 457-2440  
POC Sgt Brannan

(4) MAGTF TC: (760) 830-1366/1382

b. Ground Training Simulators (Scheduling Office)

(1) MCB Camp Lejeune: (910) 451-7392

(2) MCB Camp Pendleton: Simulators & Trainers can be scheduled via RFMSS. Training Support Division Help Desk/Ref Desk (760) 725-4444.

(3) MCB Camp Butler: Tactical Training Devices and Simulators Support Section Help Desk, 011-81-98-969-2610/DSN: 623-2610.

(4) MCB Hawaii: Simulators & Trainers must be scheduled via RFMSS. G3 Ops & Training Scheduling Office: (808) 257-8816/ DSN 457-8816. Modeling & Simulations Division (M&S): (808) 257-1110/ DSN 457-1110.

(5) MAGTF-TC: DVTE (760) 830-5622; SAVT (760) 362-2324; CACCTUS (760) 830-1382; CCS (760) 830-4192 & ISMT (760) 830- 4187. Schedule ODS and HMMWV Egress Assistance Trainer via RFMSS.

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX E

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . .	1000	E-2
1000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS. . . . .	1001	E-3
2000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS. . . . .	1002	E-17
3000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	1003	E-25
4000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	1004	E-39
5000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	1005	E-43

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX E

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

Listed in this appendix are the individual and collective gunnery events utilized within the Tank T&R manual.

1000. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE EVENTS

Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
1802-GNRY-1001		Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)	E-3
1802-GNRY-1003		Direct the Engagement Process (S/L)	E-4
1802-GNRY-1004		Perform Individual Actions to Unload Stuck Main Gun Round	E-5
1802-GNRY-1005		Perform Individual Actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun	E-5
1802-GNRY-1006		Perform Individual Actions to Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun	E-6
1802-GNRY-1007		Perform Individual Actions to Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun	E-7
1802-GNRY-1008		Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station	E-8
1802-GNRY-1009		Perform Individual Actions to Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)	E-9
1802-GNRY-1010		Load the Main Gun	E-10
1802-GNRY-1011		Evacuate an Injured Crewman	E-10
1812-GNRY-1001		Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)	E-11
1812-GNRY-1003		Perform Individual Actions to Unload Stuck Main Gun Round	E-12
1812-GNRY-1004		Unload Stuck Case Base from Main Gun	E-13
1812-GNRY-1005		Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun From Loader's Station	E-13
1812-GNRY-1006		Perform Individual Actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun	E-14
1812-GNRY-1007		Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)	E-15
1812-GNRY-1008		Evacuate an Injured Crewman	E-16
1812-GNRY-1009		Load the Main Gun	E-16
1802-GNRY-2001		Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System (S/L)	E-17
1802-GNRY-2002		Supervise Boresighting of a Tank (S/L)	E-18
1812-GNRY-2001		Perform Individual Actions to Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun	E-19
1812-GNRY-2002		Perform Individual Actions to Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun	E-20
1812-GNRY-2003		Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System (S/L)	E-21
1812-GNRY-2004		Perform Individual Actions to Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)	E-22
1812-GNRY-2006		Supervise Boresighting of a Tank (S/L)	E-23
1812-GNRY-2007		Apply the Principles of the Engagement Process (S/L)	E-24

1812-GNRY-2008		Supervise Zeroing Tank Main Gun	E-24
TANK-GNRY-3001		Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)	E-25
TANK-GNRY-3002		Zero Tank Main Gun	E-26
TANK-GNRY-3003		Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun	E-27
TANK-GNRY-3004		Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun	E-28
TANK-GNRY-3005		Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)	E-29
TANK-GNRY-3006		Conduct Tank Table II (P)	E-30
TANK-GNRY-3007		Conduct Tank Table III (S/L)	E-32
TANK-GNRY-3008		Conduct Tank Table IV (L)	E-34
TANK-GNRY-3009		Conduct Tank Table V (L)	E-35
<b>TANK-GNRY-3010</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Tank Table VI (L)</b>	<b>E-37</b>
TANK-GNRY-4001		Conduct Tank Table VII (S/L)	E-39
TANK-GNRY-4002		Conduct Tank Table VIII (S/L)	E-40
<b>TANK-GNRY-4003</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Tank Table IX (L)</b>	<b>E-42</b>
TANK-GNRY-5001		Conduct Tank Table X (S/L)	E-43
TANK-GNRY-5002		Conduct Tank Table XI (L)	E-44
<b>TANK-GNRY-5003</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Conduct Tank Table XII (L)</b>	<b>E-46</b>

#### 1001. 1000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

**1802-GNRY-1001:** Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and all associated training devices.

**STANDARD:** To pass all tests in accordance with MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery.

#### **PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct Ammunition Identification.
2. Conduct Vehicle Identification.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M240 7.62mm machine gun.
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M48 .50 Cal machine gun.
5. Perform MRS update.
6. Reload 120mm main gun.
7. Conduct Crew Fire Evacuation Drill.
8. Evacuate an injured crewman.
9. Boresight M1A1 tank main gun.
10. Conduct firing circuit check on the M256 breechblock.
11. Perform Failure to Fire (Misfire) Procedures on Abrams main gun.

#### **REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: Boresight only.

---

**1802-GNRY-1003:** Direct the Engagement Process (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit.

**STANDARD:** To destroy or neutralize a threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-5003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
------------------	--------------------	------------------	------------------------	--------------	-----------

Yes                      S/L                      M1A1 AGTS                      Crew Hours                      2                      Y

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**    Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**    Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).

---

**1802-GNRY-1004:**    Perform Individual Actions to Unload Stuck Main Gun Round

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    6 months

**GRADES:**    2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:**    FORMAL

**CONDITION:**    Given a tank.

**STANDARD:**    To return main gun back to operational status.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify stuck round.
2. Remove stuck round.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**    TANK-GNRY-3010

---

**1802-GNRY-1005:**    Perform Individual Actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    6 months

**BILLETS:**    Tank Commander

**GRADES:**    2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:**    FORMAL

**CONDITION:**    Given a tank and references.



**STANDARD:** So that center of impact of the last round fired is within .15 mils of the aiming point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Fire for confirmation with KE.
4. Record data.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for CE.
6. Conduct precision alignment of the GAS.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 rounds per tank
CA31 Ctg, 120mm TP-T M1002	4 rounds per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-GNRY-1006:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a stationary tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.
3. Zero Coax.
4. Record readings for both boresight and zero.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	N

NOTES: This system will only train the Gunner and Tank Commander. It does not incorporate the Driver and Loader.

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	100 rounds per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-GNRY-1007:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.
3. Boresight both the day and thermal sights.
4. Zero day sight.
5. Zero thermal sight.
6. Record readings for both the day and thermal sights.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-GNRY-1008:** Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a stationary or moving tank with a three-man crew and targets.

**STANDARD:** Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare tank commander's station.
2. Operate tank commander's station.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
Al31 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	200 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).

---

**1802-GNRY-1009:** Perform Individual Actions to Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the fire control system is operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Identify discrepancies.
4. Record data.
5. Correct discrepancies.
6. Record corrected data.
7. Complete AACs.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** AAC solution board and Muzzle Boresighting Device.

---

**1802-GNRY-1010:** Load the Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, all associated training devices, and a fire command.

**STANDARD:** 1 round in 7 seconds or less.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive fire command.
2. Select ammunition.
3. Load main gun.
4. Clear the path of recoil.
5. Ensure ammunition door is closed.
6. Arm Breech arming handle.
7. Announce "UP."

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006                      TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:** Sabot, HEAT, MPAT, Canister, MPHE (when available) or Dummy rounds.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1802. See Appendix G for further detail.
  2. This event does not meet live-fire prerequisites.
-

**1802-GNRY-1011:** Evacuate an Injured Crewman

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, associated equipment and crew.

**STANDARD:** To remove injured personnel from a tank without causing additional harm.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Initiate crew evacuation procedures.
2. Conduct crew evacuation procedures.
3. Adhere to all safety precautions.
4. Move to a safe location.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3005

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1802. See Appendix G for further detail.
2. This event does not meet live-fire prerequisites.

---

**1812-GNRY-1001:** Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, all associated training devices and references.

**STANDARD:** To pass all tests in accordance with MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct Ammunition Identification.
2. Conduct Vehicle Identification.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M240 7.62mm machine gun.
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M48 .50 Cal machine gun.
5. Perform MRS update.
6. Reload 120mm main gun.
7. Conduct Crew Fire Evacuation Drill.
8. Evacuate an injured crewman.
9. Boresight M1A1 tank main gun.
10. Conduct firing circuit check on the M256 breechblock.
11. Perform Failure to Fire (Misfire) procedures on Abrams main gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: Boresight only.

---

**1812-GNRY-1003:** Perform Individual Actions to Unload Stuck Main Gun Round

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To return Main Gun back to operational status.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify stuck round.
2. Remove stuck round.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

---

**1812-GNRY-1004:** Unload Stuck Case Base from Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To return main gun to fully operational condition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify stuck case base.
2. Remove stuck case base.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
2. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

TANK-GNRY-4003

---

**1812-GNRY-1005:** Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun From Loader's Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Loader

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.



**STANDARD:** Until the targets are suppressed, destroyed, or the order "Cease Fire" is given.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare loaders station.
2. Operate loaders machine gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-GNRY-5003		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	100 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-1006:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So that center of impact of the last round fired is within .15 mils of the aiming point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Fire for confirmation with KE.
4. Record data.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for CE.
6. Conduct precision alignment of the GAS.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3002  
TANK-GNRY-4003

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3010

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per tank
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	4 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-1007:** Perform the Engagement Process (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To destroy or neutralize a threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** 1812-GNRY-2007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

---

**1812-GNRY-1008:** Evacuate an Injured Crewman

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and all associated equipment.

**STANDARD:** To remove injured personnel from a tank without causing additional harm.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Initiate crew evacuation procedures.
2. Conduct crew evacuation procedures.
3. Adhere to all safety precautions.
4. Move to a safe location.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1812. See Appendix G for further detail.
  2. This event does not meet live-fire prerequisites.
-

**1812-GNRY-1009:** Load the Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                   **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, all associated training devices, and a fire command.

**STANDARD:** 1 round in 7 seconds or less.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive fire command.
2. Select ammunition.
3. Load main gun.
4. Clear the path of recoil.
5. Ensure ammunition door is closed.
6. Arm Breech arming handle.
7. Announce "UP."

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005                   TANK-GNRY-3010                   TANK-GNRY-4003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:** Sabot, HEAT, MPAT, Canister, MPHE (when available) or Dummy rounds.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1812. See Appendix G for further detail.
2. This event does not meet live-fire prerequisites.

**1002. 2000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS**

**1802-GNRY-2001:** Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                   **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** In order to provide obscuration for the vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect grenade discharger.
2. Power up commander's station.
3. Conduct firing circuit check.
4. Power down commander's station.
5. Load smoke grenades.
6. Power up commander's station.
7. Operate M250/M257 grenade launcher system.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-4007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
G826 Gren, Lnchr Smoke Screening IR M76	16 grenades per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1802-GNRY-2002:** Supervise Boresighting of a Tank (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, associated equipment, and references.

**STANDARD:** To calibrate the fire control system.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Coordinate crew PMCS.
2. Inspect collimation of Muzzle Boresight Device (MBD).
3. Direct conduct of boresight procedures.
4. Verify recorded data.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

---

**1812-GNRY-2001:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Gunner, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.
3. Zero Coax.
4. Record readings for both boresight and zero.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3004	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008	TANK-GNRY-3009	TANK-GNRY-3010
TANK-GNRY-4001		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	N

NOTES: This system will only train the Gunner and Tank Commander. It does not incorporate the Driver and Loader.

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	100 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-2002:** Perform Individual Actions to Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.
3. Boresight both the day and thermal sights.
4. Zero day sight.
5. Zero thermal sight.
6. Record readings for both the day and thermal sights.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008	TANK-GNRY-3009	TANK-GNRY-3010
TANK-GNRY-4001		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 round per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-2003:** Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** In order to provide obscuration for the vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect grenade discharger.
2. Power up commander's station.
3. Conduct firing circuit check.
4. Power down commander's station.
5. Load smoke grenades.
6. Power up commander's station.
7. Operate M250/M257 grenade launcher system.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams



6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-4007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
G826 Gren, Lnchr Smoke Screening IR M76	16 grenades per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1812-GNRY-2004:** Perform Individual Actions to Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the fire control system is operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Identify discrepancies.
4. Record data.
5. Correct discrepancies.
6. Record corrected data.
7. Complete AACs.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008	TANK-GNRY-3009	TANK-GNRY-3010
TANK-GNRY-4002		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** AAC solution board and Muzzle Boresighting Device.

---

**1812-GNRY-2006:** Supervise Boresighting of a Tank (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, associated equipment, and references.

**STANDARD:** To calibrate the fire control system.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Coordinate crew PMCS.
2. Inspect collimation of Muzzle Boresight Device (MBD).
3. Direct conduct of boresight procedures.
4. Verify recorded data.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

---

**1812-GNRY-2007:** Apply the Principles of the Engagement Process (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To destroy or neutralize the threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007	TANK-GNRY-3008
TANK-GNRY-3009	TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4001
TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-GNRY-5001
TANK-GNRY-5002	TANK-GNRY-5003	TANK-MANV-4001
TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007
TANK-MANV-4008	TANK-MANV-4010	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

---

**1812-GNRY-2008:** Supervise Zeroing Tank Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank with crew.

**STANDARD:** So that zeroing is performed in accordance with TM 08953A-10/1-2 and the center of impact of the last round fired is within .15 mils of the aiming point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Supervise boresight of the tank.
2. Supervise firing for zero with KE.
3. Supervise firing for confirmation with KE.
4. Supervise recording of the date by the gunner.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for CE.
6. Supervise the precision alignment of the GAS.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-12B Tank Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1005                      1812-GNRY-1006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007
TANK-MANV-4010		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M962	4 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 rounds per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002	4 rounds per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**1003. 3000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

**TANK-GNRY-3001:** Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks (AACs)

SUPPORTED MET (S) :

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the fire control system is operational.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Identify discrepancies.
4. Record data.
5. Correct discrepancies.
6. Record corrected data.
7. Complete AACs.

**REFERENCES :**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1009 1812-GNRY-2004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006
TANK-MANV-4007	TANK-MANV-4008	TANK-MANV-4010

**TANK-GNRY-3002:** Zero Tank Main Gun

**SUPPORTED MET(S) :**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So that the center of impact of the last round fired is within .15 mils of the aiming point.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Fire for confirmation with KE.
4. Record data.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for CE.

6. Conduct precision alignment of the GAS.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1005                      1812-GNRY-1006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4005	TANK-MANV-4006	TANK-MANV-4007
TANK-MANV-4010		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA38 Ctg, .50 Cal SLAP-T	4 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 round per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	4 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-GNRY-3003:** Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Prepare station for operation.
3. Boresight both the day and thermal sights.
4. Zero day sight.
5. Zero thermal sight.
6. Record readings for both the day and thermal sights.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1007                      1812-GNRY-2002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001                      TANK-GNRY-4002                      TANK-GNRY-4003  
TANK-MANV-4007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-GNRY-3004:** Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1                      MCT 1.12.2                      MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. In accordance with the technical manual, prepare the gunner station for operation.
2. Conduct PMCS on weapon prior to install.
3. Install weapon for firing.
4. Boresight weapon systems.
5. In accordance with the reference, fire a burst of 20 to 30 rounds.
6. Move the "RETICLE ADJUST" toggle switch to center the reticle aiming point to within 3 mils of the strike area.
7. Fire a second 20-30 round burst.
8. Confirm and validate impact.
9. Repeat the adjustment of the "RETICLE ADJUST" toggle switch to center the reticle aiming point as needed.
10. Fire a final 20-30 round confirmation burst.
11. Confirm, validate and record data.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1006                      1812-GNRY-2001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001                      TANK-GNRY-4002                      TANK-GNRY-4003  
TANK-MANV-4007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	N

NOTES: This system will only train the Gunner and Tank Commander. It does not incorporate the Driver and Loader.

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	100 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

**TANK-GNRY-3005:** Conduct Tank Crew Gunnery Skills Test (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1                      MCT 1.12.2                      MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To demonstrate technical proficiencies as an individual and a tank crew.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct Ammunition Identification.
2. Conduct Vehicle Identification.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M240 7.62mm Machine Gun.



4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on a M48 .50 Cal Machine Gun.
5. Perform MRS Update.
6. Reload 120mm Main Gun.
7. Conduct Crew Fire Evacuation Drill.
8. Evacuate an Injured Crewman.
9. Boresight M1A1 Tank Main Gun.
10. Conduct firing circuit check on the M256 breechblock.
11. Perform Failure to Fire (Misfire) Procedures on Abrams Main Gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1010	1802-GNRY-1011
1802-VOPS-1002	1802-VOPS-1006	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1008	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-VOPS-1005
1812-VOPS-2003		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).

---

**TANK-GNRY-3006:** Conduct Tank Table II (P)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table II is designed to train and evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle in a simulated environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a gunnery training simulator.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target from a tank.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary and moving targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target with a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets with the tank mounted machine guns.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System
3. TM 08953A-10/2 Advanced Gunnery Training System

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001
1812-GNRY-2002	1812-VOPS-1005	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	P	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	12	Y

NOTES: Event is conducted in simulator to standard prior to crew live fire qualification semi-annual gunnery.

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is determined by the MSC.

---

**TANK-GNRY-3007:** Conduct Tank Table III (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1                                      MCT 1.12.2                                      MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table III is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring 70 points per target on each engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing SCWS.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or a simulated degraded fire control system.

10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the tank mounted machine guns.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005                      TANK-GNRY-3006

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001
1812-GNRY-2002	1812-GNRY-2004	1812-GNRY-2006
1812-GNRY-2007	1812-VOPS-1005	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4007		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	550 rounds per crew
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 rounds per crew
AA38 Ctg, .50 Cal SLAP-T	16 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	8 rounds per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	7 rounds per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** 1. Advanced Inbore Marksmanship Training Enhancement System for Tanks (AIMTEST).

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This table must be qualified dry fire prior to any live fire. Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

**TANK-GNRY-3008:** Conduct Tank Table IV (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S) :**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table IV is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing SCWS.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage stationary target utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the tank mounted machine guns.

### REFERENCES :

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005

TANK-GNRY-3006

TANK-GNRY-3007

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001
1812-GNRY-2002	1812-GNRY-2004	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-VOPS-1005		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
----------------	----------------	----------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	450 rounds per crew
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	6 rounds per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	3 rounds per crew
CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028	1 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).  
Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

---

**TANK-GNRY-3009:** Conduct Tank Table V (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table V is designed to train the crew to engage moving and stationary targets utilizing all vehicle weapon systems.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and a moving target utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and a moving target utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets with the Stabilized Commanders Weapon Station, coaxial machine gun, and loaders machine gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1812-GNRY-1001
1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001
1812-GNRY-2002	1812-GNRY-2004	1812-GNRY-2007
1812-VOPS-1005		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001

TANK-GNRY-4002

TANK-GNRY-4003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	550 rounds per crew
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	50 round per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	8 round per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	5 rounds per crew
CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028	1 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).  
Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

---

**TANK-GNRY-3010:** Conduct Tank Table VI (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table VI is designed to evaluate the crew on engaging moving and stationary targets using all vehicle weapon systems while in the offensive or defensive postures.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 total points and qualify 7 of 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.



3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary and moving targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or from a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the commanders weapon station, coaxial machine gun, or loaders machine gun.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3005	TANK-GNRY-3006	TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008	TANK-GNRY-3009	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008	1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010
1802-TAC-1004	1802-VOPS-1002	1802-VOPS-1004
1812-GNRY-1001	1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-1006	1812-GNRY-1009
1812-GNRY-2001	1812-GNRY-2002	1812-GNRY-2004
1812-GNRY-2006	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-VOPS-1005

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-4001	TANK-GNRY-4002	TANK-GNRY-4003
TANK-MANV-4007		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	450 rounds per crew
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 rounds per crew
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	8 rounds per crew
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M1002	9 round per crew

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).

**1004. 4000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

**TANK-GNRY-4001:** Conduct Tank Table VII (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the sections ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3010

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
----------------	----------------	----------------

1802-GNRY-1005	1802-GNRY-1006	1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1009	1802-GNRY-1010	1802-TAC-1002
1802-VOPS-1002	1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-1003
1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-1006
1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2001	1812-GNRY-2002
1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-1001	1812-TAC-2004
1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008	1812-VOPS-1001
1812-VOPS-1005		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5010	TANK-MANV-5011
TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5014	TANK-MANV-5016

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	5	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A111 Ctg, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 rounds per Section
A598 Ctg, .50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked	100 round per Section

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

---

**TANK-GNRY-4002:** Conduct Tank Table VIII (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the gunnery and tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010                      TANK-GNRY-4001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1009	1802-TAC-1001	1802-VOPS-1002
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-GNRY-1003	1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-1009	1812-GNRY-2004
1812-GNRY-2006	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-1001
1812-TAC-2004	1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008
1812-VOPS-1001	1812-VOPS-1005	TANK-GNRY-3001
TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5010	TANK-MANV-5011
TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5014	TANK-MANV-5016

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	200 round per Section
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	100 round per Section
AA38 Ctg,.50 Cal SLAP-T	16 round per Section

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

**TANK-GNRY-4003:** Conduct Tank Table IX (L)

SUPPORTED MET(S) :

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table IX is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the gunnery and tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

## REFERENCES :

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010 TANK-GNRY-4001 TANK-GNRY-4002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-CBTS-1001	1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1010	1802-TAC-1001	1802-VOPS-1002
1812-CBTS-2003	1812-CMDC-2001	1812-GNRY-1003
1812-GNRY-1004	1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-1009
1812-GNRY-2006	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-1001
1812-TAC-2005	1812-TAC-2008	1812-TRNG-2001
1812-TRNG-2002	1812-TRNG-2003	1812-TRNG-2004
1812-VOPS-1001	1812-VOPS-1005	TANK-GNRY-3001
TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003	TANK-GNRY-3004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5004	TANK-MANV-5010	TANK-MANV-5011
TANK-MANV-5012	TANK-MANV-5014	TANK-MANV-5016

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	700 round per Section
A576 Ctg, .50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	400 round per Section
C785 Ctg, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	14 round per Section
CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028	1 round per Section

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII).  
Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

**1005. 5000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

**TANK-GNRY-5001:** Conduct Tank Table X (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table X is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010                      TANK-GNRY-4003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1008	1802-TAC-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2010
TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003
TANK-GNRY-3004		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6008	TANK-MANV-6014	TANK-MANV-6015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	5	Y

NOTES: Linked to TANK-GNRY-5003: Conduct Tank Table XII

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A111 Ctg, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	400 rounds per Platoon
A598 Ctg,.50 Cal Blank M1A1 Linked	200 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Tank Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

---

**TANK-GNRY-5002:** Conduct Tank Table XI (L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1	MCT 1.12.2	MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Tank Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 70 percent on the gunnery and tactical portions of the evaluation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

TANK-GNRY-3010	TANK-GNRY-4003	TANK-GNRY-5001
----------------	----------------	----------------

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

1802-GNRY-1003	1802-GNRY-1008	1802-TAC-1004
1812-GNRY-1005	1812-GNRY-2007	1812-TAC-2010
TANK-GNRY-3001	TANK-GNRY-3002	TANK-GNRY-3003
TANK-GNRY-3004		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-6002	TANK-MANV-6003	TANK-MANV-6006
TANK-MANV-6013	TANK-MANV-6014	TANK-MANV-6015

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	L	M1A1 AGTS	Crew Hours	5	Y

NOTES: Linked to TANK-GNRY-5003: Conduct Tank Table XII

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Ctg, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	400 round per Platoon
A576 Ctg,.50 Cal 4 API/1 API-T Linked	200 round per Platoon
AA38 Ctg,.50 Cal SLAP-T	32 round per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**



TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX F

REFERENCES

**Army Techniques Publications (ATP)**

ATP 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

**Field Manuals (FM)**

FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon

FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions

FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force

FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

FM 5-20 Camouflage

FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis

FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations

FM 5-101 Mobility

FM 5-103 Survivability

FM 21-60 Visual Signals

FM 23-30 Grenade

FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques

**Joint Publications (JP/JCS)**

JP 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations

JP 3-02.1 Amphibious Embarkation and Debarkation

JP 3-09.3 Close Air Support

JP 5-0 Joint Operation Planning

**Lubrication Instruction**

LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank

**Marine Corps Order (MCO)**

MCO 3570.1C Range Safety

MCO 3574.2k Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

MCO 4400.150 Consumer Policy Supply Manual

MCO 4400.16\_ Uniform Material Movement and Issue Priority System (UMMIPS)

MCO 4400.172 Table of Equipment (T/E) Allowance Change Procedures

MCO P4450.12 Storage and Handling of Hazardous Materials

MCO 4500.9 Defense Transportation Regulations

MCO P5090.2A Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual

MCO 4630.6 Military Airlift Command Requirement

**Marine Corps Doctrinal Publications**

MCDP 1 Marine Corps Operations

MCDP 2 Intelligence

MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations

MCDP 4 Logistics

MCDP 5 Planning

MCDP 6 Command and Control

**Marine Corps Reference Publications (MCRPs)**

MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide

MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace

MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide  
MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training  
MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery  
MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures For The Joint Application Of Firepower (JFIRE)  
MCRP 3-31.1A Employment of Landing Craft Air Cushion (LCAC)  
MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group  
MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair  
MCRP 5-12B Operational Terms and Graphics

**Marine Corps Warfighting Publications (MCWPs)**

MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations  
MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collection  
MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence  
MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations  
MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment  
MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element  
MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling  
MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations  
MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility Operations  
MCWP 3-32 Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations  
MCWP 3-35.1 Mountain Warfare Operations  
MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)  
MCWP 3-35.6 Desert Operations  
MCWP 3-37.3 MTTP for CBRN Decontamination Operations  
MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations  
MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations  
MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics  
MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)

**NAVMCs**

NAVMC 10245 Equipment Repair Order (ERO)  
NAVMC 8011 Class V Material Allowance for Training, Programmed Testing, and Security

**Technical Manuals (TMs)**

TM 05538C-10/1A Operator's Manual, Rifle, 5.56mm, M16A2 w/Equipment  
TM 08521A/09761a-23&p/2a Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3  
TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240  
TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240  
TM 08671A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 5.56mm, M249  
TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams  
TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams  
TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams  
TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System  
TM 08953A-10/2 Advanced Gunnery Training System  
TM 08953A 14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit  
TM 09134A-12&P/1 AT-4 tracer trainer  
TM 3-4230-204-12&P Operator's Manual for M11 PDA  
TM 3-6665-307-10 Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Detector Kit  
TM 4700-15/1\_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

TM 5-2590-214-10 Operator's Manual, Roller, Mine Clearing: Track-Width, Tank-Mounted  
TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, M1A1, or M1A3 Abrams Tank  
TM 9-2590-50923&P Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank  
TM 9-1005-212-25/FM 23-65 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2  
TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual Machine Gun, Cal .50  
TM 9-1005-249-10 M16A2 Operators Manual  
TM 9-1005-262-15 MAINTENANCE MANUAL, 7.62 MM MACHINEGUN M60D  
TM 9-1005-313-23&P Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G  
TM 9-1315-886-12 Launcher and Cartridge 84MM, M136 (AT-4)  
TM 9-1340-214-10 LAAW/LAAW trainer (practice)  
TM 9-1425-472-12 TOW 2 Weapon System Guided Missile System M220E4  
TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A  
TM 11-5820-1172-13 Operator and Maintenance Manual, Defense Advanced GPS  
TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio Receiver (DAGR) Satellite Signals Navigation Set AN/PSN-13  
TM 11-5820-890-10-8 SINCGARS Radio Sets, Operators Manual  
TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)  
TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2  
TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)  
TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio  
TM 11-5820-890-10-2 SINCGARS ICOM Ground Radio Operators Pocket Guide for Manpack  
TM 11-5825-283-10 Operator's Manual for Manpack Radio Sets AN/ASQ-177C(V)4; AN/PSQ-6C; AN/VSQ-2C(V)1; AN/VSQ-2C(V)2; AN/VSQ-2C(V)4  
TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)  
TM 11-5985-262-14 Antenna AS 1729/VRC  
TM 11-6665-251-10 Operator's Manual for the AN/VDR-2

**Training Circulars (TC)**

TC 25-8 Training Ranges

**Miscellaneous**

DA-2404 Form DA-2404

DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety

LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation

UM 4400-124 SASSY Using Unit Procedures

TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

APPENDIX G

MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS

1. Purpose. This appendix identifies MOS-specific physical standards and describes the execution of assessments designed to evaluate a Marine's physical capabilities, in order to provide commanders reasonable assurance a Marine has the physical capacity to perform the regularly assigned and recurrent duties of the MOS.

2. Evaluation. Marines must either 'pass' or 'fail' event or performance step assessments to the standards set forth within this manual.

3. Requirements. The following events are to be performed to the standard contained in this appendix during entry level training in order to receive initial MOS qualification.

a. For the 1802 MOS:

1802-VOPS-1002, Performance Step 2, Operate commander's station  
1802-VOPS-1007, Performance Step 3, Place battery onto back of tank  
1802-VOPS-1008, Performance Step 1, Lift tow bar  
1802-GNRY-1010, Performance Step 3, Load main gun  
1802-GNRY-1011, Performance Step 2, Conduct crew evacuation procedures  
0300-TVEH-1001, Assist in loading and unloading a tactical vehicle  
(See NAVMC 3500.44C Infantry T&R Manual)  
0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, Ensure that you and the casualty are no longer under direct enemy fire  
(See NAVMC 3500.44C Infantry T&R Manual)

b. For the 1812 MOS:

1812-VOPS-1005, Performance Step 2, Operate assigned station  
1812-VOPS-1007, Performance Step 3, Place battery onto back of tank  
1812-VOPS-1008, Performance Step 1, Lift tow bar  
1812-GNRY-1008, Performance Step 2, Conduct crew evacuation procedures  
1812-GNRY-1009, Performance Step 3, Load main gun  
0300-TVEH-1001, Assist in loading and unloading a tactical vehicle  
(See NAVMC 3500.44C Infantry T&R Manual)  
0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, Ensure that you and the casualty are no longer under direct enemy fire  
(See NAVMC 3500.44C Infantry T&R Manual)

4. Event sequencing. The MOS-specific physical standards events are not intended to be conducted in a single, continuous session. However, if the commander schedules these events to occur in sequence within a 24-hour period, adequate transition between events should permit Marines the opportunity to recover, stretch, hydrate, and prepare for the next

event. Total rest permitted between events is determined at the Commander's discretion.

5. Uniform and Equipment

a. Fighting Load. See NAVMC 3500.44C (Infantry T&R Manual) Appendix F for the Fighting Load gear list. The Utility uniform may be substituted with the Combat Vehicle Crewman (CVC) suit. This load will be worn/carried by MOSs listed within paragraph 3.a. when executing the following events:

- 0300-TVEH-1001, Assist in loading and unloading a tactical vehicle  
(See NAVMC 3500.44C Infantry T&R Manual)
- 0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, Ensure that you and the  
casualty are no longer under direct enemy fire  
(See NAVMC 3500.44C Infantry T&R Manual)

Additionally, each Marine will carry their assigned personal weapon and appropriate SL-3, combat assault sling, PEQ-15, RCO, and weapons cleaning gear.

b. Combat Vehicle Crewman (CVC) uniform. The CVC uniform will be worn by MOSs listed within paragraph 3. when executing the following events:

- 1802-VOPS-1008, Performance Step 1, Lift tow bar
- 1802-GNRY-1011, Performance Step 2, Conduct crew evacuation  
procedures
- 1812-VOPS-1008, Performance Step 1, Lift tow bar
- 1812-GNRY-1008, Performance Step 2, Conduct crew evacuation  
procedures

c. Crew Uniform with Personal Protective Equipment (PPE). The Crew Uniform with PPE is depicted in Table G-1. This load will be worn by MOSs listed within paragraph 3. when executing the following events:

- 1802-VOPS-1002, Performance Step 2, Operate commander's station
- 1802-VOPS-1007, Performance Step 3, Place battery onto back of  
tank
- 1802-GNRY-1010, Performance Step 3, Load main gun
- 1812-VOPS-1005, Performance Step 2, Operate assigned station
- 1812-VOPS-1007, Performance Step 3, Place battery onto back of  
tank
- 1812-GNRY-1009, Performance Step 3, Load main gun

CREW UNIFORM WITH PPE			
Clothing Worn & Packed	Weight (Lbs)	Quantity	Total Weight
<b>Level I (On the Body)</b>			
Combat Vehicle Crewman (CVC) suit	2.98	1	2.98
T-Shirt, Green	0.18	1	0.18
Marine Corps Combat Boots, Combat With Laces	3.12	1pr	3.12
Socks	0.16	1pr	0.16
Card, ID	0.028	1	0.028
Tags, ID	0.10	1	0.10
Helmet	3.45	1	3.45
Glove Shells w/ Inserts	0.30	1pr	0.30
Goggles, Sun, Wind, and Dust	0.15	1	0.15
Ear Plugs with case	0.10	1	0.10
<b>Total</b>			<b>10.568</b>
<b>Level II (LBE)</b>			
Scalable Plate Carrier with Soft Armor Inserted	5.40	1	5.50
<b>Total</b>			<b>5.50</b>
<b>CREW UNIFORM WITH PPE TOTAL (Level I-II)</b>			<b>16.068</b>

Table G-1: Crew Uniform with PPE

d. Substituting Equipment. Marines may substitute surrogate items to replicate the weight of equipment which is unavailable. The total weight of the equipment carried will be within 10% of the total prescribed pack weight.

6. Events Assessed. The following paragraphs outline the expected conduct of assessments, in support of a factor of either MOS assignment or sustainment.

a. 1802-VOPS-1002, Performance Step 2, Operate commander's station.

(1) Description: This event is to open and secure the Tank Commander's (TC) station.

(2) Environment: This event will be conducted in a M1A1 tank.

(3) Standard: Using an overhead press, open and secure the TC hatch within 30 seconds.

(4) Required Equipment

(a) A timepiece (digital or stopwatch) that accurately measures time to the second.

(b) A M1A1 tank with operational TC station.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will begin seated in the TC station within the M1A1 tank.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will grasp the TC hatch, and will press upward to open the hatch. Once open, the Marine will ensure the hatch is secure.

(c) Once the hatch is secured time will stop.

b. 1812-VOPS-1005, Performance Step 2, Operate assigned station.

(1) Description: This event is to open and secure the tank loaders station.

(2) Environment: This event will be conducted in a M1A1 tank.

(3) Standard: Using an overhead press, open and secure the loaders hatch within 30 seconds.

(4) Required Equipment

(a) A timepiece (digital or stopwatch) that accurately measures time to the second.

(b) A M1A1 tank with operational loaders station.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will begin seated in the loaders station within the M1A1 tank.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will grasp the loaders hatch, and will press upward to open the hatch. Once open, the Marine will ensure the hatch is secure.

(c) Once the hatch is secured time will stop.

c. 1802-VOPS-1007 and 1812-VOPS-1007, Performance Step 3, Place battery onto back of tank.

(1) Description: The battery lift simulates the crew task of loading batteries into the M1A1 tank. A mock-up battery will be lifted from the deck three times to represent that crewmember's share of the task.

(2) Environment: This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) Standard: Lift a mock-up M1A1 tank battery three times from ground to chin-level and back to the ground within 1 minute 50 seconds or less, in order to simulate required movements normally associated with the battery's installation within the tank.

(4) Required Equipment

(a) A timepiece (digital or stopwatch) that accurately measures time to the second.

(b) A M1A1 tank battery mock-up. Local commanders have the discretion to use a training aid of similar dimensions, to include actual item, in place of a mock-up battery should the mock-up not be available.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will either stand erect or crouched-down with both feet flat-the-ground. Distance between the Marine's feet should be shoulder-width apart. The Marine may choose to stand erect or crouched with feet staggered in a variation of the basic-warrior stance. The mock-up will be at rest, at the ground-level, directly in front of and reasonably close to the Marine's toes.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will lift the mock-up from the ground, to a point wherein the bottom of the mock-up breaks the plane of the Marine's chin. Once the plane has been broken, the mock-up will be lowered in a fluid, controlled motion from chin-height to the deck, and neither thrown nor dropped. While lowering the mock-up to the deck, Marines should maintain a supportive curvature of the spine, and bend their knees. One repetition will be counted once the mock-up has been placed on the deck. Repeat for a total of three repetitions.

(c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to generate the mock-up's upward momentum. However, no penalty will be assessed if Marines choose not to use their legs.

d. 1802-VOPS-1008 and 1812-VOPS-1008, Performance Step 1, Lift tow bar.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is similar to a deadlift. The deadlift will be a single repetition lift and hold of an Olympic bar with a total weight of 150 lbs.

(2) Environment. This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) Standard. Deadlift and hold an Olympic bar with a total weight of 150 lbs. at knuckle height for 30 seconds, and then lower to the deck.

(4) Required Equipment. One Olympic lifting bar with a total of 150 lbs. of weight.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will begin with feet shoulder width apart or under the hips. The bar should be above the boot laces at the start and shoulders slightly forward of the bar. Either the overhand, underhand or alternating grip may be used.

(b) When executing the deadlift, keep your chest high and maintain the curve in the lower back. While keeping the arms straight during the lift, keep the weight on the heels and extend the knees first, then hips at the top of the lift. The lift is completed when the hips are extended, knees are straight and shoulders behind the bar.

(c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to lift the Olympic bar, and to avoid 'lifting-with-their-back.'



(d) Once the deadlift position has been achieved, and the Olympic bar has been lifted to knuckle height, the Marine will maintain that position for 30 seconds. After 30 seconds the Olympic bar will be lowered to the deck in a fluid, controlled motion while maintaining the curve in the lower back while doing so.

e. 1802-GNRY-1010 and 1812-GNRY-1009, Performance Step 3, Load main gun.

(1) Description. Perform the actions of a loader in a M1A1 tank crew by transitioning a 120mm round from the stowed position to the main gun breech in order to engage targets.

(2) Environment. This event will be conducted inside a M1A1 tank.

(3) Standard. Load (1) 120mm round in (7) seconds or less.

(4) Required Equipment

(a) A timepiece (digital or stopwatch) that accurately measures time to the second.

(b) A M1A1 tank.

(c) 120mm round (Sabot, HEAT, MPAT, Canister, MPHE, or Dummy round).

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will begin seated or standing position in the loader's position within the M1A1 tank. The location of the dummy 120mm ammo round will be placed inside the 'honey comb' of the ammunition storage compartment in a position of the Marines preference.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command will be the fire command "Gunner, Sabot, Tank." On the command "Gunner," the Marine will open the ammo compartment door. The Marine will then grasp the appropriate 120mm round and load the main gun. Immediately following they will arm breech the arming handle, clear the path of recoil, and ensure the ammunition door is closed.

(c) Once all required steps are complete the Marine will announce, "UP" and time will stop.

f. 1802-GNRY-1011 and 1812-GNRY-1008, Performance Step 2, Conduct crew evacuation procedures.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is similar to a clean-and-press. The clean-and-press will be a single repetition lift of an Olympic bar with a total weight of 115 lbs.

(2) Environment. This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) Standard. Clean and press an Olympic bar with a total weight of 115 lbs., and then lower to the deck.

(4) Required Equipment. One Olympic lifting bar with a total of 115 lbs. of weight.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will begin with feet shoulder width apart or under the hips. The bar should be above the boot laces at the start. Only the overhand grip can be used in this lift.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will execute a clean and press. While the clean-and-press occurs in a fluid motion, the first move of the lift is the clean. The clean begins by lifting the bar with arms locked, and the bar close to the body. The cleaning motion ends when the shoulders are fully shrugged and the hips, knees, and ankles are extended. At this point, drop underneath the bar to catch the weight at shoulder level. The next motion of the lift is the press. Dip by slightly breaking at the hips and knees, and then drive upward with the hips and shoulders until the arms are locked out and the upper arm is next to the ear.

(c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to lift the Olympic bar, and to avoid 'lifting-with-their-back.' However, no penalty will be assessed if Marine chooses not to use their legs.

(d) Once elbow lock-out has occurred, the Olympic bar will be lowered in a fluid, controlled motion from shoulder-height, then to the deck, and neither thrown nor dropped. While lowering the bar to the deck, Marines must maintain a supportive curvature of the spine, and bend their knees.

g. 0300-TVEH-1001, Assist in loading and unloading a tactical vehicle.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is similar to a clean-and-press.

(2) Refer to NAVMC 3500.44C Infantry T&R manual Appendix F for follow on instruction in the conduct of the Mk-19 Lift.

h. 0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, Ensure that you and the casualty are no longer under direct enemy fire.

(1) Description. This is a 50 meter movement, simulating moving from a covered and concealed position, to a casualty's position, and dragging that casualty out of direct fire to a safe position.

(2) Refer to NAVMC 3500.44C Infantry T&R manual Appendix F for follow on instruction in the conduct of the Casualty Drag.

7. Performance. Marines must complete the minimum performance requirements in each event to demonstrate that they have the physical capability to perform in the particular tank MOS.